Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A - Z

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

528i
535i
550i

528i xDrive
535i xDrive

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

© 2009 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the
written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English VIII/09, 09 09 500
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 250.

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
21 Letters and numbers
22 Voice activation system

Controls
26 Opening and closing
43 Adjusting
53 Transporting children safely
57 Driving
74 Controls Overview
84 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
100 Lamps
105 Climate
110 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
124 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
132 Navigation system
133 Destination entry
142 Destination guidance
148 What to do if...

Entertainment
152 On/off and tone
155 Radio
158 Satellite radio
160 CD/DVD player and CD changer
167 Music collection
172 External devices

Communications
178 Telephone
190 Contacts
192 BMW Assist

Mobility
200 Refueling
202 Wheels and tires
211 Under the hood
215 Maintenance
217 Care
221 Replacing components
231 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
238 Technical data
243 Short commands of voice activation system
250 Everything from A to Z

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be happy to advise you.

You can find information on BMW, e.g., on technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

These sections contain information on using the voice activation system.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available with a specific BMW model.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisk * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.
When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.
BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.
BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.
BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation or its occupants.
Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.
Installation and operation of non BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment such as CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or the like may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system, or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your center, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5.
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

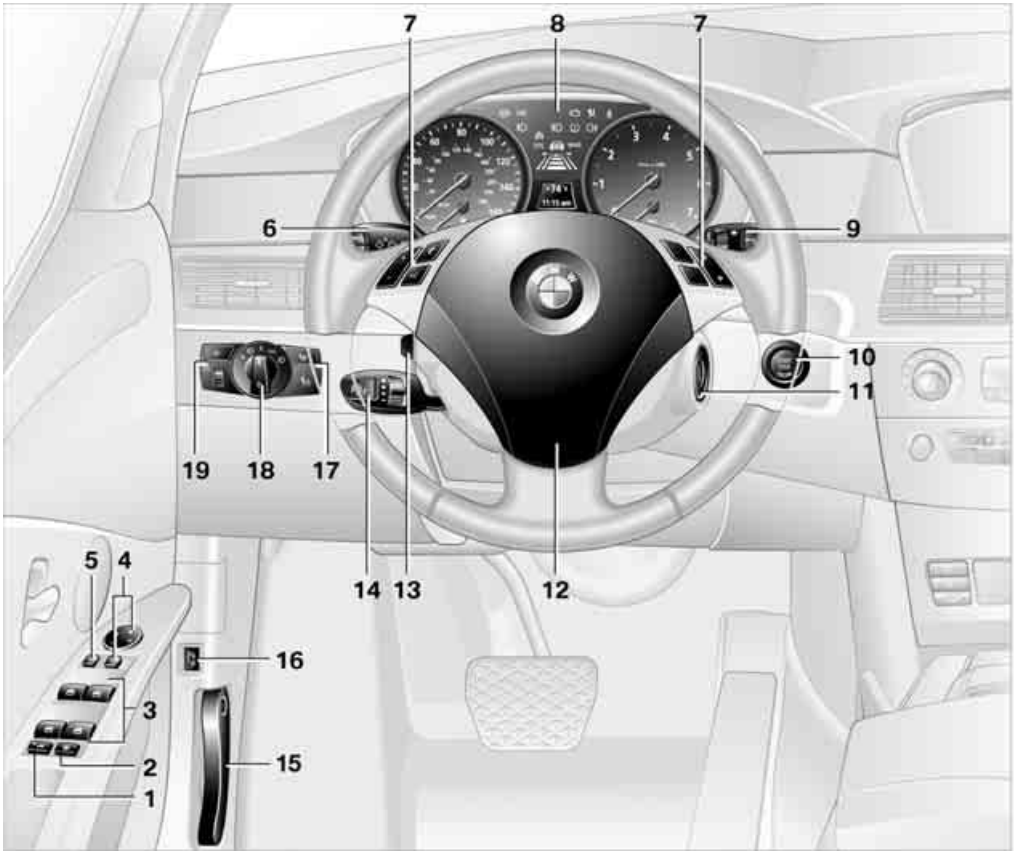
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Rear window safety switch 39

2 Sedan: sun blind* for rear window 111

3 Opening and closing windows 38

4 Adjusting exterior mirrors 50
Automatic curb monitor* 51

5 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 51

6

Turn signals 63

High beams, headlamp flasher 102

High-beam Assistant 102

Roadside parking lamps 102

CHECK Check Control 79

BC Computer 75

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

7 Buttons on steering wheel

Mobile phone* 178:

▷ Press: accepting and ending a call, starting dialing* of selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice activation system* 22

Changing radio station 155
Selecting music track 160
Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers

Changing entertainment source

Switching recirculated-air mode on/off 107

HDC* 86

Lane Departure Warning* 99

8 Instrument cluster 12

9 Windshield wipers 63

Rain sensor 64

Sports Wagon: rear window wiper 64

10 START STOP ENGINE Starting/stopping engine and switching ignition on/off 57

11 Ignition lock 57

12 Horn, entire surface

13 Steering wheel heater* 52

Steering wheel adjustment* 52

14 Cruise control* 65

Active cruise control 66

15 Releasing hood 211

16 Opening luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 31, 33

17 Head-up Display* 95

BMW Night Vision* 96

18 Parking lamps 100
Daytime running lamps* 101

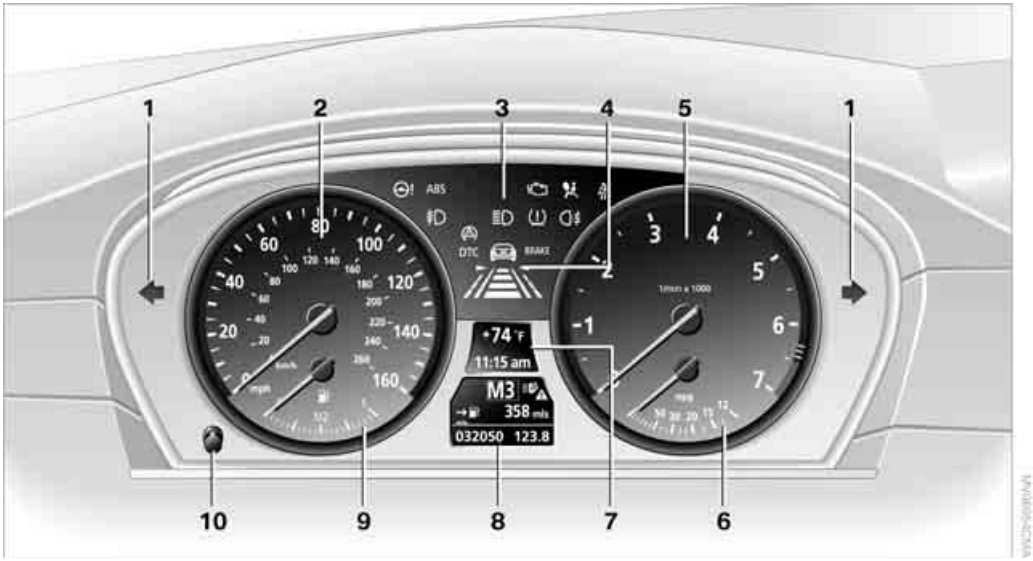
Low beams 100
Welcome lamps 100
Automatic headlamp control* 100
Daytime running lamps* 101
Welcome lamps 100
Adaptive Light Control* 101
High-beam Assistant* 102

19 Instrument lighting 104

Fog lamps* 104

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Instrument cluster



1 Indicator lamps for turn signals

2 Speedometer

3 Indicator and warning lamps 13

4 Displays for
- ▷ Active cruise control* 70
- ▷ Lane Departure Warning* 99

5 Tachometer 74

6 Energy Control 75

7 Display for
- ▷ Clock/date 74
- ▷ Outside temperature 74
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 80
- ▷ Speed of cruise control* 66
- ▷ Desired speed for active cruise control* 70

8 Display for
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 74
- ▷ Computer 75
- ▷ Date and remaining travel distance for service requirements 77
- ▷ Automatic transmission with Steptronic* 59
- ▷ Sport automatic transmission* 62
- ▷ Hill Descent Control HDC* 86
- ▷ High-beam Assistant* 102
- ▷ ⚠ Check Control message present 79

9 Fuel gauge 75

10 Resetting trip odometer 74

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

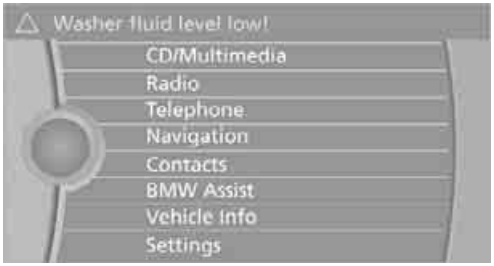
Indicator and warning lamps

The concept

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

Some lamps are tested for proper function by briefly lighting up during starting of the engine or when the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages



Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

Additional information, e.g. on the cause and elimination of a malfunction, can be opened via the Check Control system, refer to page 79.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps signal particular functions:

High beams/headlamp flasher 102

Fog lamps* 104

Parking brake applied 59

Parking brake applied for Canadian models

Lamp flashes:
DSC or DTC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 86

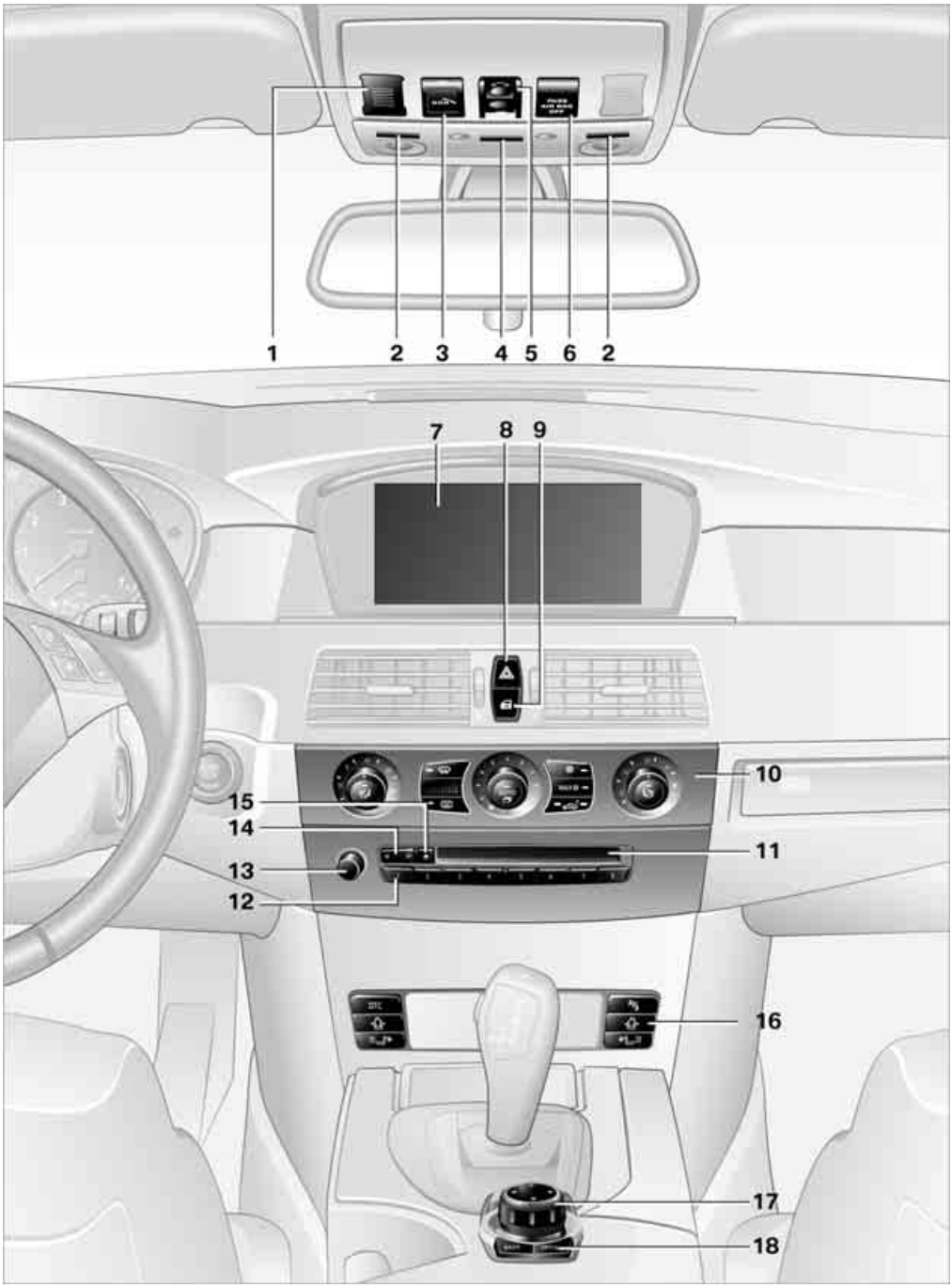
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 86

Exhaust-gas values 216

Exhaust-gas values for Canadian models 216

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1 Microphone for hands-free mode for telephone*
and for voice activation system* 22

2 Reading lamps 104

3 Initiating an Emergency Request call* 231

4 Interior lamps 104

5 Glass sunroof*, electric 39
Panorama glass roof* 40

6 Passenger airbag status lamp 94

7 Control Display 16

8 Hazard warning flashers

9 Central locking system 30

10 Automatic climate control 105

TEMP Temperature setting 106

AUTO Automatic air distribution and volume 106

Cooling function 107

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC* 107

MAX Maximum cooling* 107

Air volume 107

Defrosting windows and removing condensation 106

Rear window defroster 106

11 CD/DVD drive 152

12 Programmable memory buttons 20

13 Switching entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 152

14 Changing
- ▷ radio station 155
- ▷ track 160

15 Ejecting CD/DVD 152

16
Heated seats* 49

Active seat ventilation* 50

Adjusting active backrest width* 45

Active seat* 50

PDC Park Distance Control* 84

DTC DTC Dynamic Traction Control 86

Opening luggage compartment lid/tailgate* 31, 33

17 Controller 16
Can be turned, pressed, or moved in four directions

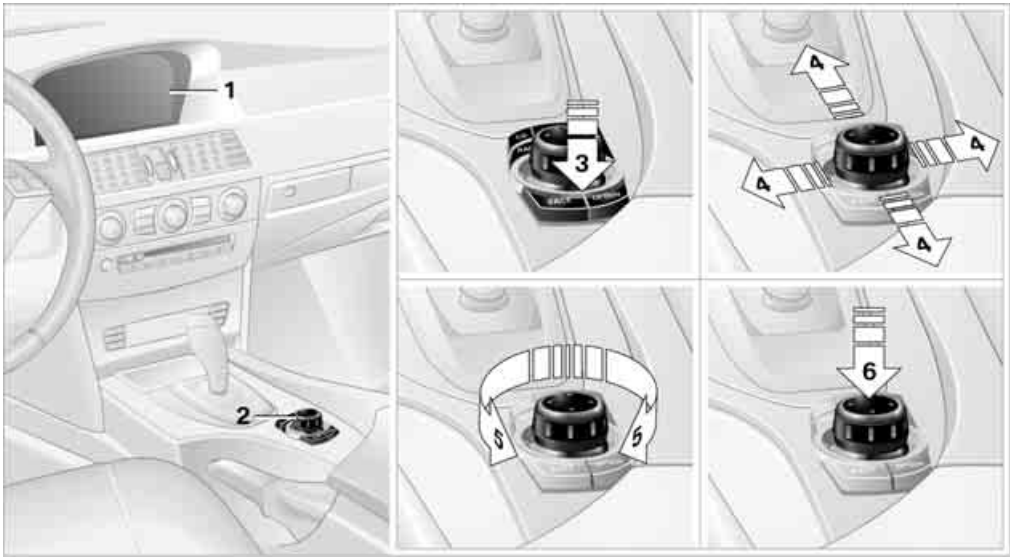
18 Buttons on the controller 17
Selecting menus directly

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive combines the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons
You can use the buttons to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select the menu items and create settings.

- ▷ Call up a menu directly, arrow **3**
- ▷ Move in four directions, arrows **4**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **5**
- ▷ Press, arrow **6**

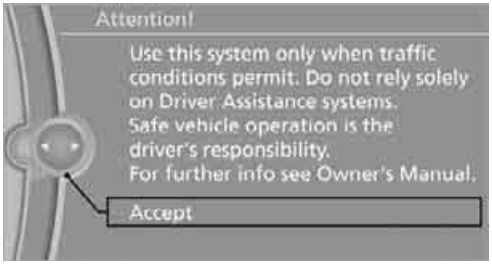
To avoid posing an unnecessary hazard due to inattention, both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users: never attempt to use the controls or make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Buttons on the controller	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu
CD	Opens the CD/Multimedia menu
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu
BACK	Displays the previous panel
OPTION	Opens the Options menu

Operating principle

From radio readiness, refer to page 57, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

The message is hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Opening the main menu

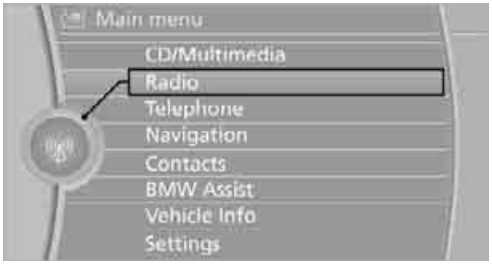
Press the **MENU** button.
The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting a menu item

The menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

A new menu is displayed or the function is executed.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

Changing between panels

After selecting a menu item, e.g., "Radio", a new menu is displayed on a panel. The panels can overlap.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Move the controller to the left or right to change between the panels.

White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

Opens the Options menu

Press the **OPTION** button.
The "Options" menu is displayed.

Additional option: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu appears.

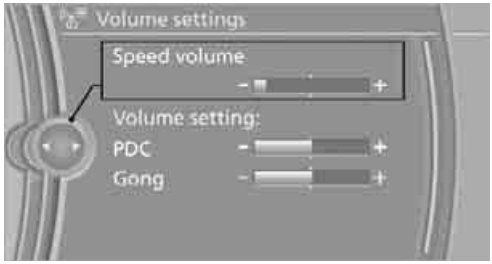
The "Options" menu contains the following:

▷ Screen settings, refer to page 19.

▷ Control options for the selected menu.

Adjusting settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.

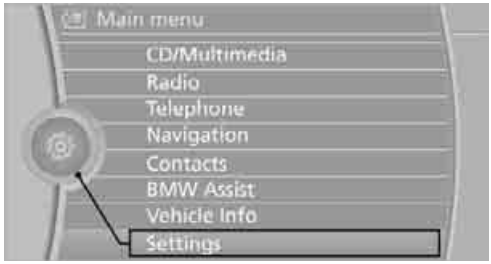


3. Press the controller to confirm the setting.

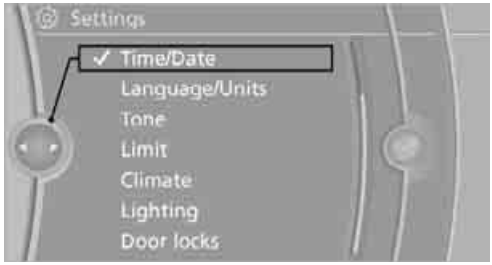
▷ The scroll bar on the right side indicates whether additional menu items or settings can be selected that are currently not visible.◀

Example: setting the clock

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

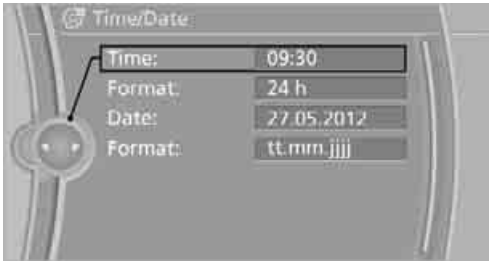


3. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



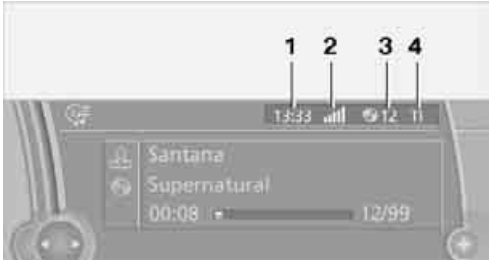
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



5. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information



1 Time

2 Display for:

- ▷ Reception strength of the wireless network, depends on the mobile phone
- ▷ Incoming, outgoing or missed call
- ▷ SMS* received
- ▷ Phone book* loading
- ▷ Roaming* active

3 Display for:

- ▷ Entertainment:
  Radio, CD/DVD, external devices
- ▷ Phone book*:
  Name of the mobile phone paired with the vehicle

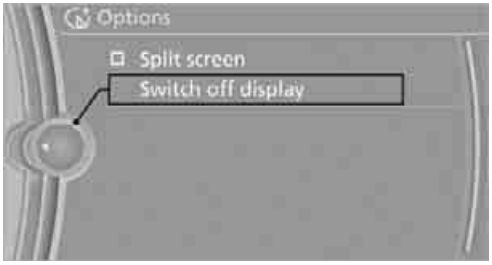
4 Sound output is switched off or traffic bulletin display*:

- ▷ "TI":
  Traffic bulletins are switched on.
- ▷ No display:
  Traffic bulletins are switched off.

Other displays:
The status information is temporarily hidden when there are Check Control instructions or inputs via the voice activation system*.

Switching the control display on/off

1. Press the **OPTION** button.
2. "Switch off display"



Press the controller to switch on.

Split screen

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

1. Press the **OPTION** button.
2. "Split screen"

✔ The split screen is activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting the display for the split screen content

When the split screen is switched on, you can select the content displayed on the screen.

1. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
2. Select the display.

Programmable memory buttons

Certain iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory keys and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

Storing functions

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button longer than 2 seconds.

Example for programmable memory keys

Switch the voice instructions for the navigation on/off.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol using the controller.
4. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button longer than 2 seconds.

Executing a function

1 ... 6 Press the button.

The function is executed immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying button assignment

Touch the button with a finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

Displaying short info

1 ... 6 Touch the button.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

Displaying detailed information

1 ... 6 Touch the button longer.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Letters and numbers

Entering letters and numbers

1. Turn the controller: select the letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
⇤	Press the controller: delete one letter or number
⇤	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers
␣	Enter a blank space

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Entering letters
123	Entering numbers

Wordmatch concept during navigation

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

Destination search: the entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

▷ The only letters offered for entering addresses are those for which data are available.

Town/city names can be entered with the spelling used in any of the languages available on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Voice activation system*

The concept

The voice activation system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice activation system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice activation system uses a special microphone located in the area of the interior rearview mirror, refer to page 14.

Precondition

Via iDrive, set the language that applies for the voice activation system in order to enable identification of the spoken commands. To set the language of iDrive, refer to page 82.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

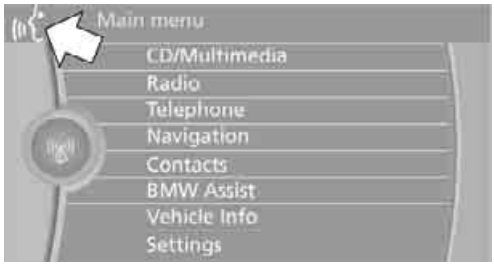
›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice activation system.

Voice commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Press the button.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice activation system can respond to commands.



2. Say the command.
   The command is displayed on the Control Display.

This symbol is displayed on the Control Display when you can enter additional commands. If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹

In dialogs that call for a text of your choice, the procedure can only be canceled using the button on the steering wheel.

Possible commands

The commands available in each case depend on the menu item selected on the Control Display.
To have the possible commands read aloud:

›Voice commands‹

For example, if "CD/DVD" is selected, the commands for operating CD/Multimedia are read aloud.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Calling up functions immediately via short commands

Short commands enable you to perform certain functions immediately, irrespective of which menu item is selected, refer to page 243.

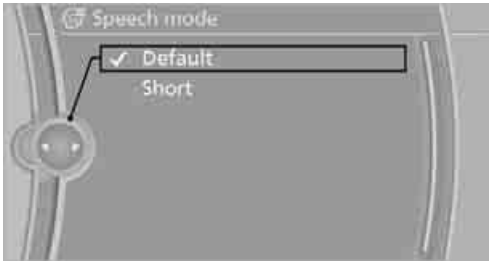
Example: selecting the track of a CD

1. Switch on entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. Select the music track, for instance:
   ›CD track 4‹
   System says:
   ››Track 4‹‹

Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter variant. In the shorter variant of the voice dialog, the prompts and responses from the system are abbreviated.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"



4. Select a setting:
   - "Default"
   - "Short"

Notes

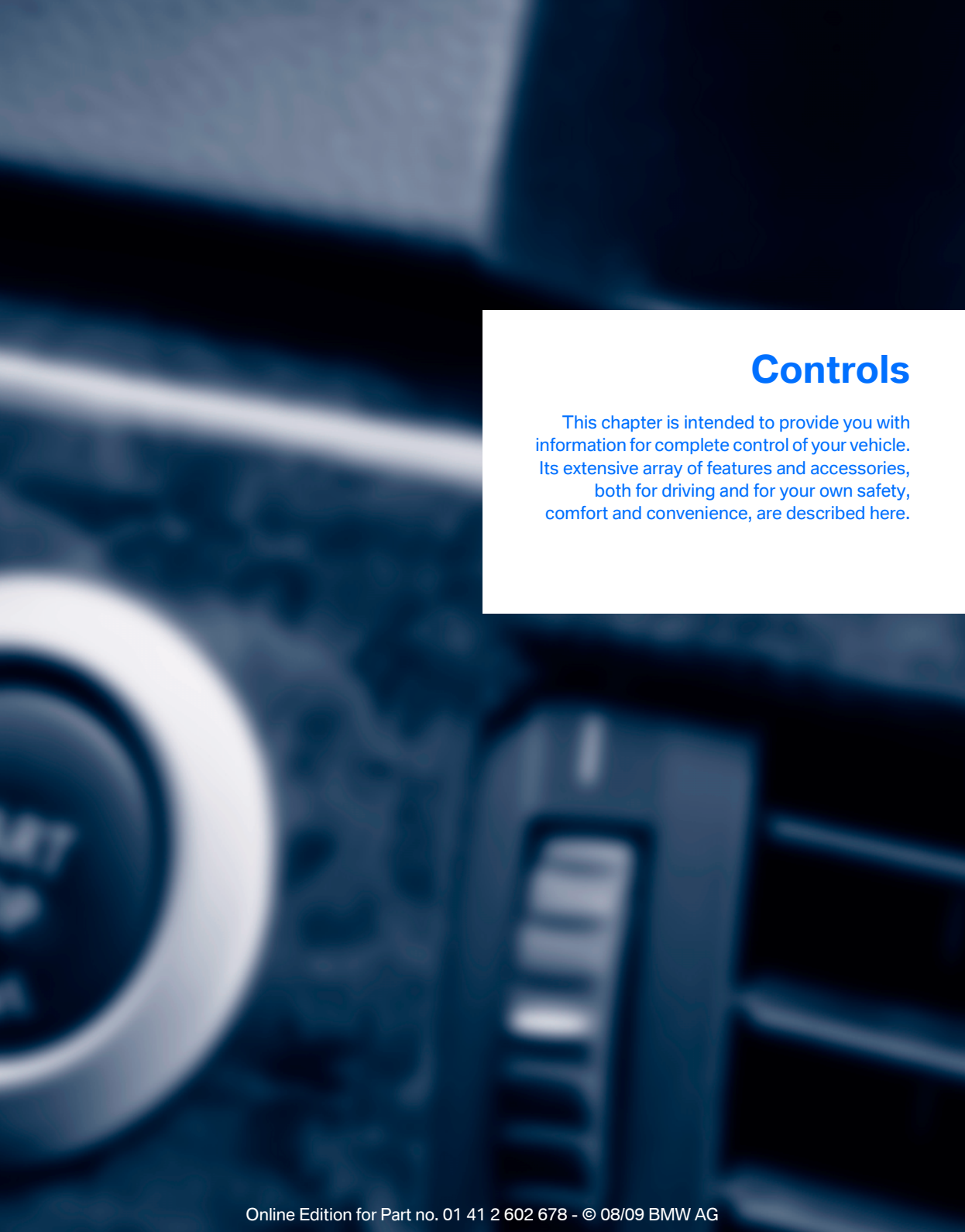
To operate the phone by voice, refer also to page 185.◀

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.
- Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses. This also applies when spelling out and saying a full word during destination entry.
- When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice activation system and no abbreviations.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof* or panorama glass sunroof* closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG



Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control

1 Remote control with integrated key

2 Spare key

3 Adapter for spare key, in glove compartment

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For Comfort Access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 38.

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are activated and executed in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 26.

Information on the required for maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 215.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Glove compartment, refer to page 112
- ▷ Sports Wagon: floor panel flap in cargo bay, refer to page 118
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 30
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid, refer to page 31.

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.

Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove compartment and slide the spare key into the adapter before use.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Per-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

sonal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls, for two with Comfort Access*.

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- Behavior of the central locking system when unlocking vehicle, refer to page 28
- Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 30
- Displays on Control Display:
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 83
  - Measuring units for consumption, route/distances, temperature, and pressure, refer to page 76
  - 12h/24h clock format, refer to page 79
  - Date format, refer to page 79
  - Language on Control Display, refer to page 82
- Lighting settings:
  - Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 63
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 100
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 101
  - Daytime running lamps*, refer to page 101
  - High-beam Assistant*, refer to page 102
- PDC Park Distance Control*: optical warning, refer to page 84
- Head-up Display*: selection and brightness of display, refer to page 96
- BMW Night Vision*: display settings, refer to page 98
- Automatic climate control: AUTO program and intensity, cooling function, and automatic recirculated air control/recirculated-air mode, temperature, air distribution, temperature in the upper body region, refer to text starting on page 106
- Navigation system*: voice instructions for destination guidance, refer to page 143

In addition, the following, most recently selected settings are recalled during unlocking:

- Programmable memory buttons: selecting stored functions, refer to page 20
- Positions of driver's seat, outside mirrors, and steering wheel*, refer to page 45
- Audio sources: volume and tone settings, refer to page 152
- Radio:
  - Display of stored stations, refer to page 157
  - Switching RDS Radio Data System on/off*, refer to page 156
- Phone: volume setting, refer to page 181

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system functions when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Luggage compartment lid or tailgate and rear window
- Fuel filler flap

Operating from outside

- Via the remote control
- Using door lock
- With Comfort Access* via the door handles

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In addition, it the remote control is used, the welcome lamps, the interior lamps and the courtesy lamps* are switched on or off. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.
You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 35.

Operating from inside

Via the button for central locking, refer to page 30. The fuel filler flap is not locked.

In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using remote control

Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lamps*, and the welcome lamps are switched on.

Setting unlocking behavior

You can set whether the first press of the button unlocks only the driver's door or the entire vehicle.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button"

4. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. Pressing the button twice unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Comfort opening"
5. Press the controller.

Comfort opening

Hold the button down. The windows and the glass sunroof* open.

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀

Switching on interior lamps

With vehicle locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages, etc.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system in case of danger:

Press the button for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off alarm: press any button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sedan: opening luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.
To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked luggage compartment lid is also locked again after closing.◀

Sports Wagon: unlocking tailgate

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate will open slightly, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.
To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked tailgate is also locked again after closing.
When opening the tailgate, the luggage compartment roller cover is raised.◀

If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window.◀

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Flash when lock/unlock"

4. Press the controller.

Flashing when locking/unlocking the vehicle is switched on.

Malfunction

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate due to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 26.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

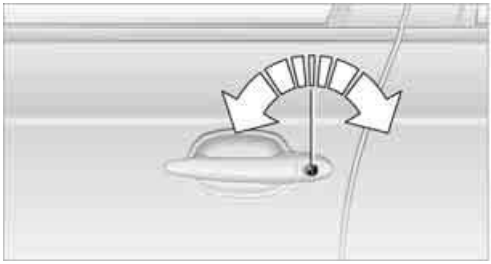
- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Opening and closing: Using door lock

⚠ Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀



When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler flap.
2. Turning the key a second time unlocks the remaining doors and the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Convenient opening and closing

You also have the option of operating the windows and the glass sunroof* from the driver's door lock.

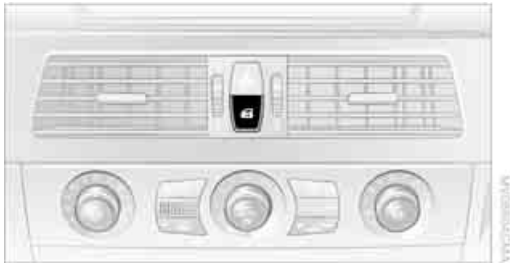
Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

⚠ Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from inside



This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid or tailgate and rear window with the front doors closed, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"
     The central locking system locks again after a short time if no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.

✓ Automatic locking is switched on and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening

▷ Either unlock the doors together with the button for the central locking system and

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

then pull the door handle above the armrest or

▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or

▷ press down the lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠ Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Doors

Automatic soft closing*

To close the doors, merely push them gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

⚠ Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise injuries may result.◀

Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

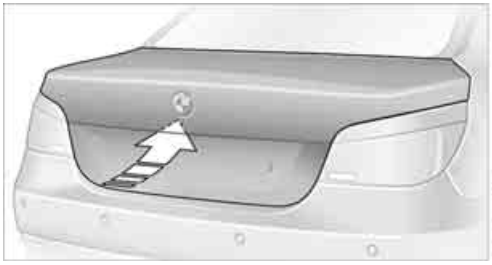
▷ During opening, the luggage compartment lid/tailgate pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

Sedan

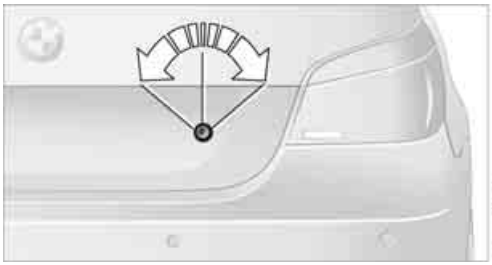
Opening from inside

Press button **1** or button **2***: the luggage compartment lid opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside



Press the button on the luggage compartment lid or the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.



All keys, refer to page 26, fit the luggage-compartment lid lock.

Locking separately

Turn a key in the lock of the luggage compartment lid to the right past a resistance point and remove it in the horizontal position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

This locks the luggage compartment lid and disconnects it from the central locking system. If you then hand over the remote control without the integrated key, refer to page 26, no access is possible via the luggage compartment lid. This is an advantage when using valet parking, for example.

Unlocking again and opening manually

Turn the key toward the left up to the stop: the luggage compartment lid opens.

If you use the lock to unlock the luggage compartment lid while the alarm system is armed, the alarm will be triggered. You should therefore unlock the vehicle ahead of time. If the alarm is inadvertently triggered: switch off the alarm, refer to page 35.◀

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

Emergency release

Pull the lever in the cargo bay. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

Sports Wagon: opening and closing rear window

Small items can be loaded and unloaded quickly when the rear window is opened separately.

Press the button: the rear window opens somewhat. It can be swung upward.

Press the window closed to close.

When opening the rear window, the luggage compartment roller cover is raised.◀

If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window.◀

Automatic luggage compartment roller cover*

When opening the rear window, the luggage compartment roller cover is raised, and when the rear window is closed, it is lowered.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Make sure that the closing area of the luggage compartment roller cover is clear of obstructions, otherwise the payload or the luggage compartment roller cover may be damaged.◀

Details on the luggage compartment roller cover are provided on page 117.

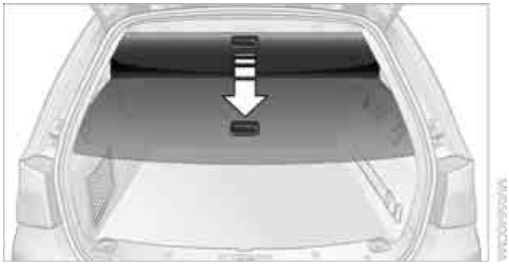
Sports Wagon: tailgate

Opening from inside

Press button **1** or button **2***: the tailgate opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside

Press the button on the tailgate or the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: The tailgate opens somewhat. It can be swung upward.

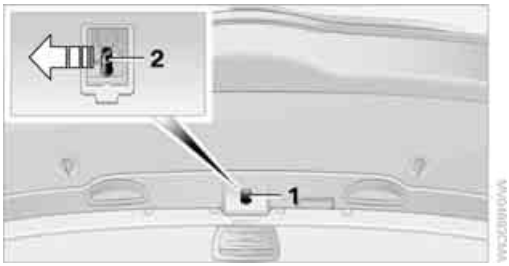


When opening the tailgate, the luggage compartment roller cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate, press down the luggage compartment roller cover until it engages.◀

Opening manually

In case of an electrical malfunction:

1. From the cargo bay, press out the cover **1** on the tailgate with a screwdriver.



2. Press the locking bar **2** in the direction of the arrow.
3. Open the tailgate and press in the cover again.

The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the tailgate make it easier to pull down.

To close the tailgate, merely press it down gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

Sports Wagon: automatic tailgate operation*

Adjusting opening height

You can adjust how far the tailgate is to open.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Tailgate"

4. Turn the controller until the desired opening height is selected.

Opening tailgate

The tailgate opens automatically when you:

▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate when the vehicle is unlocked.

▷ Press button **1** or button **2***.

▷ Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

In some country-specific versions, the tailgate can only be opened using the remote control if the vehicle was unlocked first. During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

Automatic luggage compartment roller cover

When the tailgate or rear window are opened, the luggage compartment roller cover is raised, and when the tailgate and rear window are closed, it is lowered.

Make sure that the closing area of the luggage compartment roller cover is clear of obstructions, otherwise the payload or the luggage compartment roller cover may be damaged.◀

Details on the luggage compartment roller cover are provided on page 117.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Closing tailgate

⚠ Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

The tailgate closes automatically when the button on the inside of the tailgate is pressed.

To interrupt the opening or closing process:

- ▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.
- ▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Closing is not canceled when you put the vehicle into motion.◀

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- ▷ When a door, the hood or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window are opened
- ▷ To movements in the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 36
- ▷ To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle
- ▷ To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

- ▷ with an acoustic alarm
- ▷ by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- ▷ by flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

The luggage compartment lid/tailgate can also be opened with the system armed with the button on the remote control, refer to page 31. When the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again.

Switching off alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 28.
- ▷ Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- ▷ The indicator lamp under the interior rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking: doors, hood, luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g., in case of an attempted wheel theft or towing.

Interior motion sensor

In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and glass sunroof* must be completely closed.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ In two-level garages
- ▷ When transporting on car-carrying trains, by sea or on a trailer
- ▷ When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort Access*

Comfort Access allows you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g., in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the associated remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking vehicle
- ▷ Comfort closing
- ▷ Opening luggage compartment lid/tailgate separately
- ▷ Sports Wagon: opening rear window separately
- ▷ Starting engine

Functional requirement

- ▷ The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate can only be locked if the vehicle detects that the remote control you are carrying is outside the vehicle.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

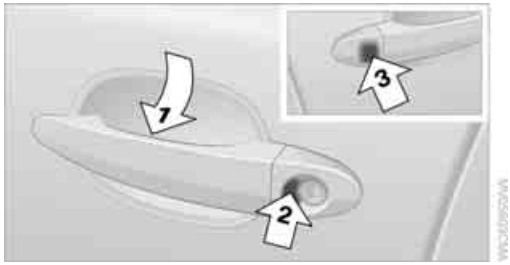
Comparison with ordinary remote control

You can control the functions mentioned previously with the Comfort Access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Therefore, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing beginning on page 26 beforehand.

The special features when using Comfort Access are described in the following.

▷ Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows or the glass sunroof, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary.◀

Unlocking



Grasp a door handle fully, refer to arrow **1**, but do not touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3** when doing so. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Locking

- ▷ On the driver's door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **2**, with a finger for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.
- ▷ On the remaining doors, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **3**, with the back of your hand for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

▷ To preserve the battery, please make sure that the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.◀

Comfort closing

Hold a finger or the back of your hand against the surface, arrow **2** or **3**, but do not grasp the door handle while doing so.

The windows and the glass sunroof* are closed.

⚠ Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately.◀

Opening luggage compartment lid/ tailgate separately

Press the button on the luggage compartment lid/tailgate. This corresponds to pressing the button.

▷ If a remote control accidentally left in the cargo bay is detected in the locked vehicle after closing the luggage compartment lid/ tailgate or the rear window, the lid or rear window opens again. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Sports Wagon: opening rear window separately

Press the button on the rear window, refer to page 32.

Switching on radio readiness

By pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 57.

▷ When doing so, do not depress the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine will start immediately.◀

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 57.

If you take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle with the engine running, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. As long as no remote control is detected, it is only possible to restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off.

Switching off engine with automatic and sport automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off in transmission position P, refer to page 58.
To switch off the engine in transmission position N, the remote control must be inserted in the ignition lock.

Before driving into a car wash with automatic and sport automatic transmission

1. Insert remote control into ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Engage transmission position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The vehicle can roll.

Malfunction

The Comfort Access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. Then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine following this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

When unlocking or locking/comfort closing do not simultaneously grasp the door handle and touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3**. Otherwise, you may limit the function.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Replacing battery

If the battery of the remote control is dead, a message will appear in the Control Display.

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 26.
2. Remove cover.

3. Lay in new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.

Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves.◀

Opening, closing

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press switch beyond resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Separate switches for the rear windows are located in the rear.

For information on using Convenient opening and closing at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 28 or 30.

For information on comfort closing with Comfort Access, refer to page 37.

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the front doors has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside or if, for example, ice on the window prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The pinch protection system is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold again within approx. 4 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The window closes without the pinch protection system.

Safety switch

With the safety switch, you can prevent the rear windows from being opened or closed via the switches in the rear passenger area, by children, for example. The LED lights up when this safety feature is activated.

Always press the safety switch when children ride in the rear, otherwise uncontrolled closing of the windows could lead to injuries.◀

Glass sunroof*, electric

The glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 57.

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves.◀

Raising

Press the switch.
The closed glass sunroof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.

Do not use force to close the sliding visor with the glass sunroof in its raised position, otherwise the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Opening, closing

▷ Slide the switch back to the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open together for as long as you hold the switch in this position.

▷ Briefly press the switch back beyond the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open automatically. Briefly pressing the switch stops the motion.

In a similar manner, the glass sunroof closes when you slide the switch forward. The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

For information on using Convenient opening and closing at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 28 or 30.

For information on comfort closing with Comfort Access, refer to page 37.

Opening and closing automatically

Briefly press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The following movements are also automatic:

▷ Press the switch with the sunroof open: the sunroof is raised all the way.

▷ When the sunroof is raised, briefly press the switch in the opening direction: the sunroof is opened all the way.

Briefly pressing the switch stops the motion.

Pinch protection system

If the glass sunroof encounters resistance when closing from roughly the center of the roof opening or when closing from the raised posi-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

tion, the closing action is interrupted and the glass sunroof reopens a short way.

Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside, slide the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold. The roof closes without the pinch protection system.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the raise command. Then have the system initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

Moving manually*

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the glass sunroof manually.

1. Fold the cover panel down, if necessary using a screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 221.

2. Insert the Allen wrench* into the opening provided. Move the glass sunroof in the desired direction. The arrow below indicates the rotation direction for closing.

Sports Wagon: Panorama glass sunroof

The panorama glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 57.

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the panorama glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed. Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves.◀

Raising

Press the switch.
The closed sunroof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.

Do not use force to close the sliding visor with the glass sunroof in its raised position, otherwise the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Opening, closing

Sliding visor

You can move the sliding visor independently with the sunroof closed or raised.

- ▷ Slide the switch back to the resistance point.
  The sliding visor opens as long as you keep the switch in this position.
- ▷ Briefly press the switch back beyond the resistance point.
  The sliding visor will open automatically. Briefly pressing the switch stops the motion.

You can close the sliding visor in a similar manner by sliding the switch forwards.

Panorama glass sunroof

With the sliding visor open, proceed as described under Sliding visor.

For information on using Convenient opening and closing at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 28 or 30.

For information on comfort closing with Comfort Access, refer to page 37.

Opening and closing sunroof and sliding visor together

Briefly press the switch beyond the resistance point twice consecutively.

Briefly pressing the switch stops the motion.

Comfort modes

- ▷ Press the switch twice with the sunroof open:
  The sunroof is raised.
- ▷ When the sunroof is raised, briefly press the switch twice in the opening direction:
  The sunroof is opened all the way.

Comfort position

The sunroof is not completely open in the comfort position. This reduces the wind noises in the interior.

Each time the panorama glass sunroof is completely opened or closed, it stops in the comfort position. If desired, continue the motion following this with the switch.

Pinch protection system

If the panorama glass sunroof or sliding visor encounter resistance when closing from roughly one third of the sunroof opening or when closing from the raised position, the closing action is interrupted and the panorama glass sunroof and sliding visor reopen a little.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside, slide the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold. The roof closes without the pinch protection system.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the raise command. Then have the system initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

Moving manually*

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the sunroof manually.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Fold back the cover, using the screwdriver from the toolkit at the points indicated if necessary, refer to page 221.

2. Insert the Allen wrench* into the opening provided. Move the sunroof in the desired direction. The arrow below indicates the rotation direction for closing.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the sitting position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 53.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.
No one and nothing should come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the front airbags are triggered.
Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbags, otherwise injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.◀

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 93.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 46.

Safety belts

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle is provided with five seats, which are all equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the belt in the upper body area periodically to readjust the tension, in order to avoid a reduction in the restraint of the safety belt.
Sports Wagon: if the center safety belt in the rear is used, the larger backrest half must be locked, refer to page 117, otherwise the middle safety belt has no restraining action.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 48.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Seats

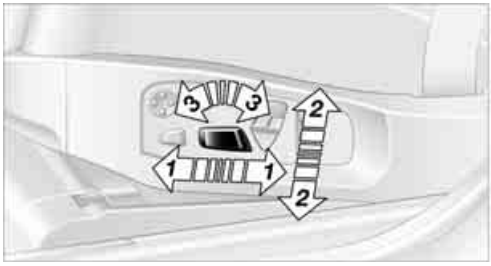
Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
Also on the passenger side, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Please follow the instructions on damage to safety belts provided on page 48 and the information on the active front head restraints on page 47.

Adjusting seat

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 43.◀

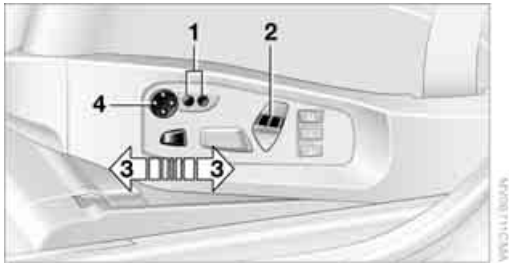


1 Longitudinal direction
2 Height
3 Angle

4 Backrest

Adjusting comfort seat*

In this seat, you can also adjust:



1 Backrest width
2 Shoulder support
3 Thigh support
4 Lumbar support*

Shoulder support

the adjustable upper backrest also supports the back in the shoulder region. This provides a relaxed driving position and helps relieve stress on the shoulder muscles.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Lumbar support*

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

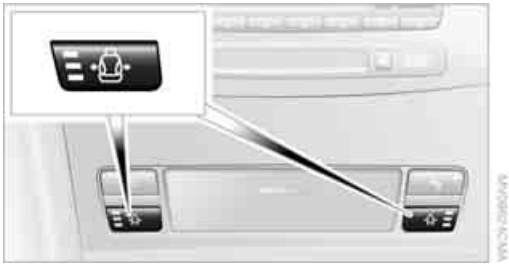
- ▷ Increase or decrease curvature: press front or rear section of switch.
- ▷ Shift curvature up or down: press upper or lowers section of switch.

Adjusting active backrest width*

First set a comfortable backrest width, see above. Based on the backrest width set, the lateral support is automatically adapted to the current driving situation.

The adaptation of the backrest width and the speed of the adjustment vary depending on the program. You can select from among three programs from comfort to sport.

Button with three LEDs

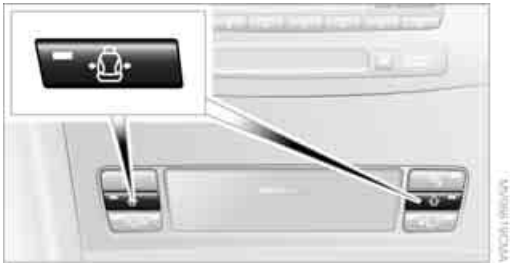


Press button once per program:

- ▷ "Comfort": one LED
- ▷ "Normal": two LEDs
- ▷ "Sport": three LEDs

To deactivate: Press button longer.

Button with one LED



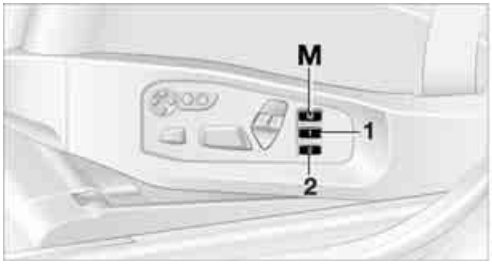
Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is shown on the Control Display. The LED in the button lights up.

To deactivate: Press button longer.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the backrest width temporarily opens all the way.

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory*



You can store and request two different positions for the driver's seat and passenger seat*, exterior rearview mirrors, and steering wheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored in the memory.

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 57.
2. Set the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the M button:
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**:
   The LED goes out.

Requesting

Do not request a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel.◀

Comfort mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and keep it pressed until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Requesting with remote control

The last positions of the driver's seat, the exterior rearview mirrors, and steering wheel are stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can choose when the position is requested:

- ▷ Request when unlocking vehicle
- ▷ Request when opening driver's door

When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects behind the seat as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

Selecting automatic call-up

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position auto."

The function for automatically calling up the last seat position is switched on and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching off automatic call-up

Deactivate "Last seat position auto.".

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident. Only remove the head restraints if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraints before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

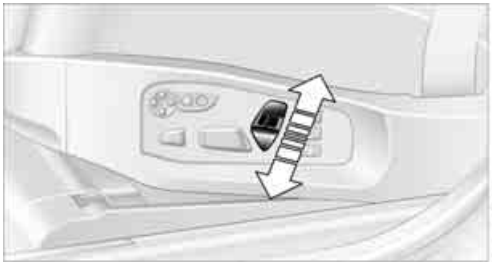
Active front head restraints

In the event of a rear-end collision of sufficient severity, the active head restraint reduces the distance to the head.

Do not use seat covers or head restraint covers that could impede the proper functioning of the active head restraint. Otherwise, there is no assurance that the active head restraint will perform its protective function and it is not possible to take advantage of its injury-reducing potential in the event of a rear-end collision.
Have the active head restraints reset after they are triggered in a rear-end collision. Only have this work carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, this safety equipment will not function properly.◀

Please contact a BMW center if you wish to have the front head restraints removed and installed.◀

Front seats: height adjustment



Front seats: adjusting distance to the back of the head

▷ Forward: pull up.

▷ Back: push the button and slide the headrest cushion toward the rear.

Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

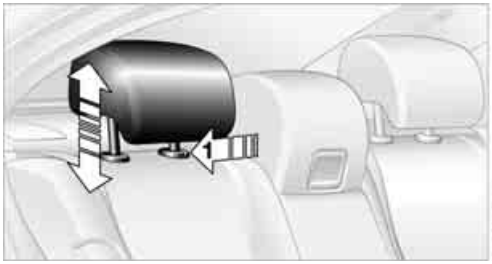
Comfort seat*

You can adjust the distance to the back of the head with the shoulder support, refer to page 44.

Adjusting side extensions

You can fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Rear seats: height adjustment



▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and push the head restraint downward.

Removing

1. Pull the head restraint upward to the stop.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint all the way out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Safety belts

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 43.◀

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger seat*

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please check whether the safety belt is correctly positioned.

The safety belt reminder is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.

Releasing

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 44.

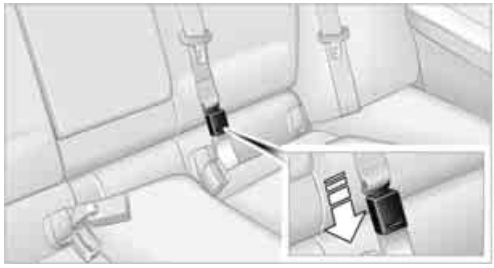
The two rear safety belt buckles integrated into the rear seat are for passengers sitting on the left and right. The belt buckle embossed with the word CENTER is intended exclusively for use by passengers riding in the center position.

Damage to safety belts

When subjected to strain due to an accident or in the event of damage, replace the safety belts, the belt tensioners, and any child restraint systems and have the belt anchor points checked. Only have this work carried out at a BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

Rear center safety belt

With through-loading system*:
Before using the center rear seat, release the latch plate from the fixture on the rear window shelf and insert it into the belt lock of the center safety belt. Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

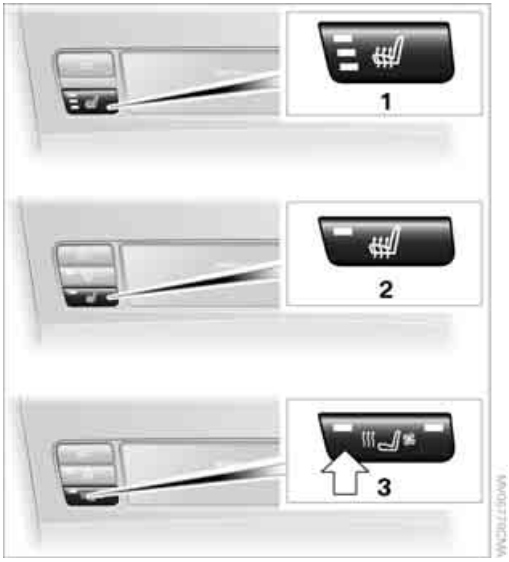


Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Heated seats*

Front

The appearance and arrangement of the buttons may vary depending on the equipment.



1 Seat heating, three LEDs

2 Seat heating, one LED

3 Seat heating with active seat ventilation*

Press the respective button once per temperature level. The temperature level is shown on the Control Display with buttons **2** and **3**. The maximum temperature is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

The temperature is reduced and if need be, the heating is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LEDs remain lit.

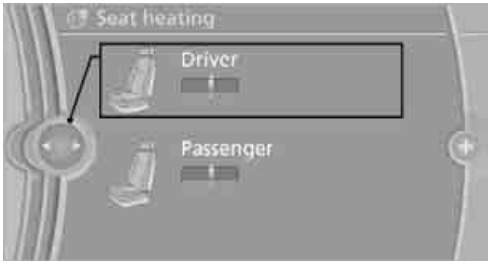
To switch off: Press button longer.

Temperature distribution without active seat ventilation

The heat output can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Seat heating distribution"



4. Turn the controller to adjust the distribution.
   The setting is applied.

Temperature distribution with active seat ventilation

The heat output can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Seat heating distribution"

4. Turn the controller to adjust the distribution.
   The setting is applied.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Rear

Operation similar to front seat heating; two temperature levels, without temperature distribution.

Active seat ventilation*

The appearance and arrangement of the buttons may vary depending on the equipment.

1 Active seat ventilation

2 Active seat ventilation with seat heating

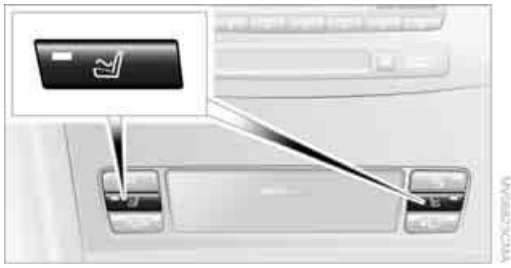
Press the respective button once per ventilation level. The ventilation level appears on the Control Display. The maximum level is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

The air quantity is reduced and if need be, the ventilation is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LEDs remain lit.

To switch off: Press button longer.

▷ The highest level is used for rapid cooling, e.g., when the vehicle has become heated up. After a short time, the system is automatically switched down one level in order to prevent excessive cooling.◀

Active seat*



The seat cushion is actively varied by alternately raising and lowering the right and left half of the seat cushion. This reduces muscular tension and fatigue to help prevent lower back pain.

Press the button to switch on; the LED lights up.

The action of the system is reduced and if need be, switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LED remains lit.

If you switch off the active seat, it can take up to 1 minute before the two halves of the seat cushion have returned to their initial position.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

⚠ The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1 Adjusting

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 45.

Adjusting manually

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

Pressing button **3** allows you to fold mirrors in and out up to a speed of approx. 20 mph/ 30 km/h. This is advantageous, for example, in car washes, narrow streets or for bringing mirrors that have been manually folded in back into the correct position. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

⚠ Before going through a car wash, fold the mirrors in manually, or with button **3**, otherwise they could be damaged, depending on the width of the car wash system.◀

Automatic heating

Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated whenever the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror – automatic curb monitor*

Activating

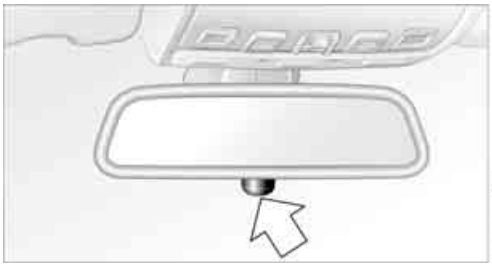
1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow **1**.

2. Shift into reverse or move selector lever into position R.
   The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow **2**.

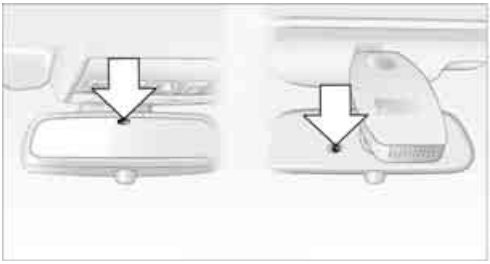
Interior rearview mirror



To reduce the dazzle effect of following vehicles at night, turn the knob.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



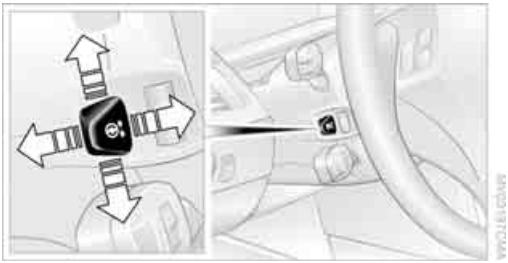
This feature is controlled by two photocells in the inside rearview mirror, one on the front and one on the back.

For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not attach stickers of any kind to the windshield in front of the mirror, either.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement.◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing steering wheel positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 45.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

Steering wheel heating*

Press the button.

When the steering wheel heater is operating, the LED in the button lights up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported in the rear in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise there is an increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags for the front passenger must be deactivated. Otherwise, a child traveling on that seat will face a significant risk of injury if the airbags are deployed, even with a child restraint system.
Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back and up as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt. Do not change the seat position after this.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 94.

Installing child restraint systems

Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for selection, installation and use of the child restraint systems. Otherwise the degree of protection may be reduced.◀

On front passenger seat

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated, as otherwise there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags are triggered.◀

Seat position

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back and up as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt. Do not change the seat position after this.

Backrest width* on front passenger seat

Open the backrest width setting of the front passenger seat all the way. After mounting the child seat, deactivate the active backrest width adjustment and do not call up any memory position. Otherwise this limits the stability of the child seat on the front passenger seat.◀

1. After unlocking the vehicle, sit on the front passenger seat and close the door to call up the memory position.
2. Completely open the backrest width adjustment, refer to page 44.
3. Deactivate active backrest width adjustment, refer to page 45.
4. Install child seat.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Child seat security

All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

Locking safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to retract and pull taut against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the safety belt strap to retract all the way.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

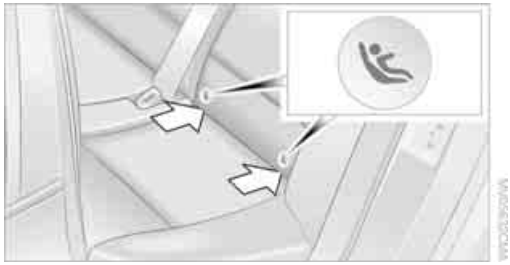
LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for CHildren.

Follow the system manufacturer's instructions on installation and use of LATCH child restraint systems in order not to impair their protective function.◀

Before attaching the LATCH child seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child restraint fixing system.

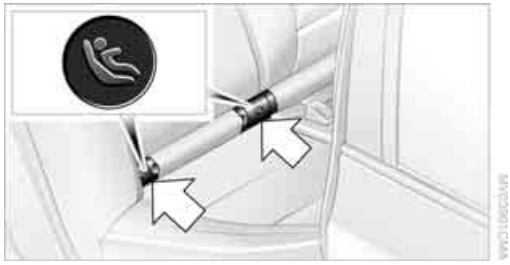
Make sure that the LATCH mounts have properly clicked into place and that the child restraint system is resting snugly against the backrest. Otherwise, the protective action may be impeded.◀

Sedan: rear seats



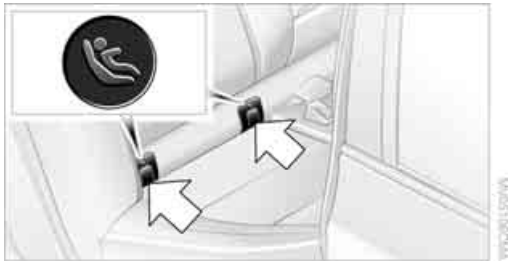
The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Sedan: rear seats with through-loading system*



The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located behind the indicated protective caps. Remove the cover caps before mounting the child seat.

Sports Wagon: rear seats



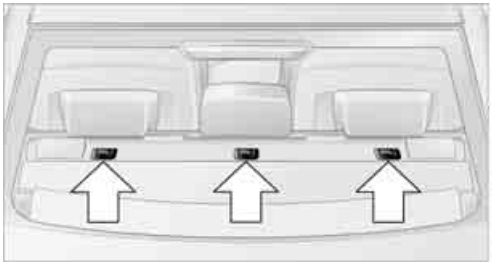
The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located behind the indicated protective caps and are covered again after the child seat is removed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Child restraint system with tether strap

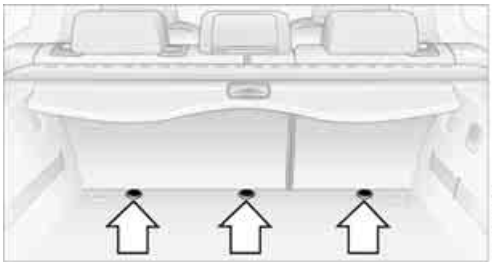
Only use the tether-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, otherwise the mounting points could be damaged.◀

Sedan



There are three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows. Fold the corresponding mounting point upward before using.

Sports Wagon

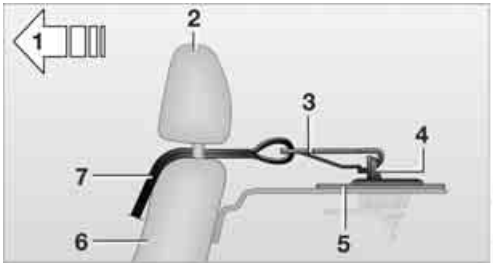


Three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap are provided under covers in the cargo bay floor, refer to arrows. Remove the corresponding covers before use.

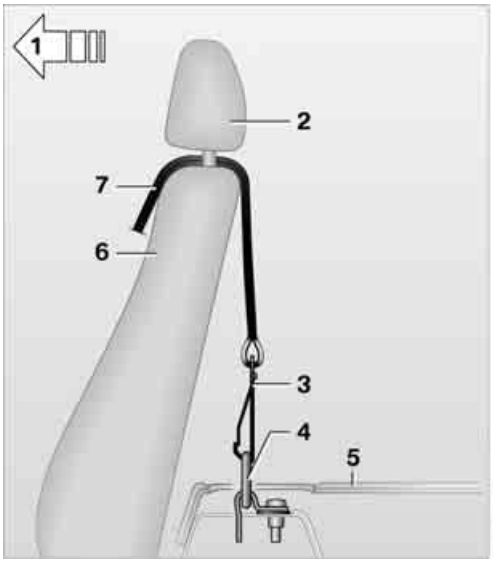
Placement of tether strap

Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed over sharp edges and does not twist on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt may not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀

Outer rear seat, Sedan



Outer rear seats, Sports Wagon



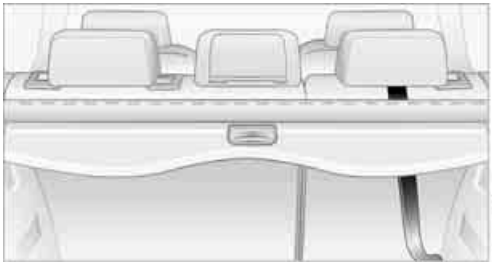
1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraints
3 Hook of upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point
5 Rear window shelf/luggage compartment floor
6 Backrest
7 Upper retaining strap of child restraint system

Fold upward or remove covers before using the mounting points.

1. Slide the head restraint upward.
2. Thread the upper retaining strap between the head restraint supports.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

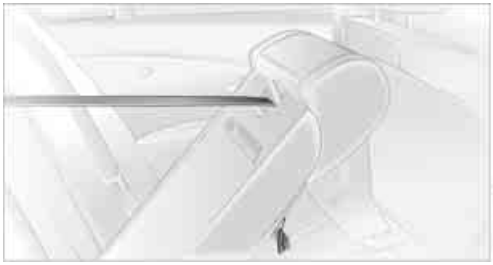
3. Sports Wagon: thread the retaining strap between the backrest and the luggage compartment roller cover. Make sure that the rear backrest is locked in position.



4. Attach the retaining strap hook to the mounting point.
5. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
6. Pull the retaining strap taut.

Center rear seat

1. Fold the center armrest somewhat toward the front.
2. Guide retaining strap through the opening.



3. Fold back the center armrest.
4. Sports Wagon: thread the retaining strap between the backrest and the luggage compartment roller cover. Make sure that the rear backrest is locked in position.

5. Attach the retaining strap hook to the mounting point.
6. Pull the retaining strap taut.

On journeys

If the vehicle is equipped with rear side airbags, make sure that children do not lean out of the child seat towards the door panels. Otherwise injuries can be caused if the side airbags are triggered.◀

Child-safety locks for rear doors

Slide down the safety lever on the rear doors: the door can now be opened from the outside only.

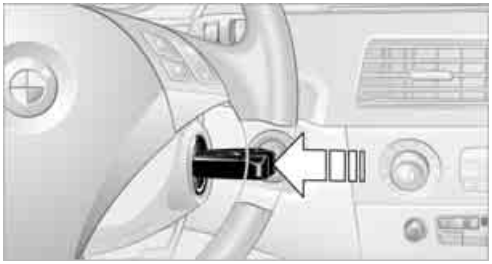
Safety switch for power windows

Always press the safety switch for the power windows, refer to page 39, when children are riding in the rear of the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Ignition lock

Inserting remote control into ignition lock



Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.

Radio readiness switches on.
Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation.

Comfort Access*

With Comfort Access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock in exceptional cases, refer to page 36.

Removing remote control from ignition lock

Do not pull the remote control out of the ignition lock using force, as otherwise damage may result.◀

Before removing the remote control, first press it in as far as possible to release the locking device.

The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.

Automatic and sport automatic transmission

The remote control can only be removed when transmission position P is selected: interlock.

Start/Stop button

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

The engine is started when you press the Start/Stop button and depress the clutch if the car has manual transmission or the brake if the car has automatic transmission.◀

Radio readiness

Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The time and outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off:

- when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- with Comfort Access* by touching the surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 37

Ignition on

All electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 74.

Please switch off the ignition and the electronic systems/consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Radio readiness and ignition switched off

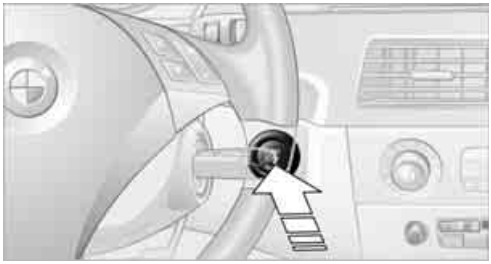
All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

Starting engine

Do not run the engine in enclosed areas, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas.
Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, select the idling position, or shift the transmission into position P and firmly apply the parking brake, otherwise the vehicle can begin to roll.◀

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive at a moderate engine speed.



Manual transmission

Remote control in ignition lock or with Comfort Access in vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into idling position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Automatic and sport automatic transmission*

Remote control in ignition lock or with Comfort Access in vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off engine

When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.
When parking, firmly apply the parking brake, as otherwise the vehicle could roll.◀

Manual transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle stopped.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 57.

Automatic and sport automatic transmission*

1. Shift transmission into position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 57.

Before driving into a car wash

The vehicle can roll if you proceed according to the following steps:

1. With Comfort Access: insert the remote control into the ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Shift into transmission position N.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Switch off the engine.

Transmission position P will be engaged:

▷ after approx. 30 seconds

▷ if you remove the remote control from the ignition lock

Parking brake

The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

The indicator lamp lights up, and a signal also sounds when starting off. The parking brake is applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing

Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to apply the parking brake while the vehicle is in motion, do not pull it too firmly. In doing so, continuously press the button of the parking brake lever. Otherwise, too firm an application of the parking brake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the car to swerve.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the parking brake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the parking brake is applied.◀

Manual transmission

While shifting in the 5th/6th gear lane, press the gearshift lever toward the right, otherwise accidental shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could result in engine damage.◀

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When pressing the gearshift lever to the left, overcome some resistance.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 61.

Transmission positions

P R N D M/S + –

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displays in instrument cluster

P R N D DS S1* to S6* M1 to M6

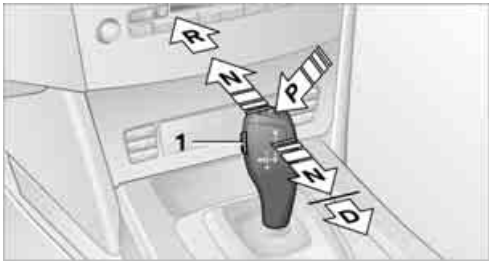
The transmission position is indicated, and in the manual mode, the gear currently engaged.

Engaging transmission position

- ▷ Do not leave the transmission position P until the engine is running: interlock.
- ▷ With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of P or N; otherwise the shift command will not be executed: shiftlock.

  ⚠ To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.◀

Engaging N, D, R



Briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary. Press button **1** simultaneously out of P or into R.

The engaged transmission position is also displayed on the selector lever.

The selector lever immediately returns to the center position when released.

Engaging P

Press button **P**.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

▷ P is engaged as soon as you switch off the engine unless N is engaged and with Comfort Access, the remote control is inserted in the ignition lock, refer to Before driving into a car wash, page 58.◀

N Neutral

Can, for example, be engaged in automatic car washes. The vehicle can roll.

▷ N remains engaged even after the engine is switched off whenever you leave the remote control in the ignition lock. This function is useful, for example, in automatic car washes, refer to page 58.◀

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

Kick down

Kick down enables you to achieve maximum performance.
Press the accelerator pedal beyond the increased resistance at full throttle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Press selector lever toward the left from transmission position D:
The sport program is activated, and DS is displayed in the instrument cluster; with the sport automatic transmission* also S1 to S6. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

When the selector lever is pressed forward or back, the manual mode is activated and the Steptronic shifts the gear. The instrument cluster shows M1 through M6.

Upshifts and downshifts are only carried out at a suitable engine and vehicle speed, e.g., a downshift is not carried out at excessively high engine speeds. The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

To resume automatic mode, press the selector lever to the right.

Manually unlocking and locking transmission lock

In case of a power failure, e.g., when the battery is drained or disconnected, or an electrical fault, manually release the transmission lock, as otherwise the rear wheels are blocked and the vehicle cannot be towed.

Only manually release the transmission lock for towing and firmly apply the parking brake beforehand so that the vehicle cannot roll. Reengage the transmission lock after parking the vehicle at its destination.

Unlocking

1. Reach into the trim-piece opening, arrow **1**, and firmly pull the trim piece upward, arrow **2**.

2. Remove cover over the opening, refer to 3.
3. Insert a screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 221, into the opening, arrow **1**.

4. Pull the screwdriver toward the rear until it is heard to engage, arrow **2**, and leave it inserted in the opening. The transmission lock is released.

Releasing on sport automatic transmission*

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve over the selector lever.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Reach into the trim-piece opening, arrow **1**, and firmly pull the trim piece upward, arrow **2**.

4. Remove cover over the opening, refer to 5.
5. Insert a screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 221, into the opening, arrow **1**.

6. Pull the screwdriver toward the rear until it is heard to engage, arrow **2**, and leave it inserted in the opening. The transmission lock is released.

Locking

1. Pull out the screwdriver upward.
   The transmission lock is locked again.

2. Reinstall the cover and the trim piece.

Information on jump starting and towing from page 232.

Sport automatic transmission*

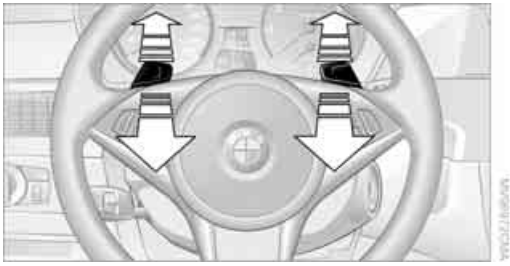
You can also shift manually with two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

You can also choose between two driving programs: Normal or Sport, refer to Dynamic Driving Control.

Shift paddles on steering wheel

The shift paddles allow you to shift gears quickly, as both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

- ▷ When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the gearshift system switches into the manual mode.
- ▷ If you do not shift with the shift paddles and do not accelerate for a certain time, the system switches into the automatic mode again when the selector lever is in D.



- ▷ To shift up: pull one of the shift paddles.
- ▷ To shift down: press one of the shift paddles.

Dynamic Driving Control

The Dynamic Driving Control makes it possible for your BMW to react in an even more performance-oriented manner at the push of a button:

- ▷ The speed range of the engine is optimally utilized.
- ▷ Gearshifts are faster.
- ▷ The engine responds more spontaneously to accelerator pedal movements.
- ▷ The steering will operate in an even sportier mode.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ In the automatic mode, the 6th gear is not engaged.

Activating system

Press the SPORT button.
The LED in the button lights up and SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Deactivating system

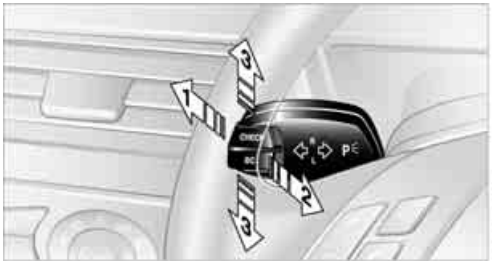
▷ Press the SPORT button again

▷ Engage reverse gear

▷ Switch off engine

The LED in the button and SPORT in the instrument cluster go out.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

▷ Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb needs to be replaced.◀

Signaling briefly

Press lever to resistance point and hold for as long as you wish to signal.

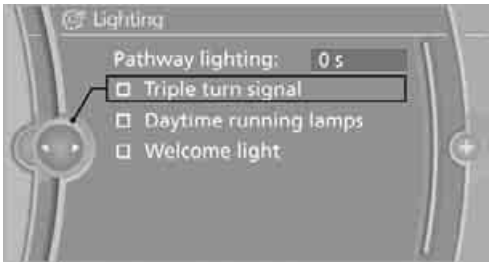
Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point; the turn signal flashes three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

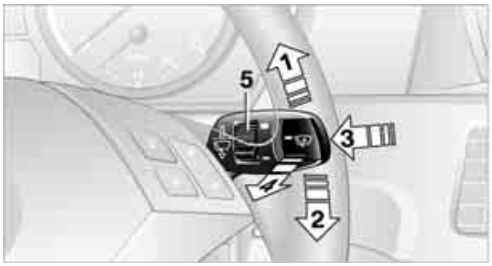
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"



Triple turn signal activation is activated and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system



1 Switching on wipers

2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe

3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4 Cleaning windshield, headlamps and BMW Night Vision camera*

5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

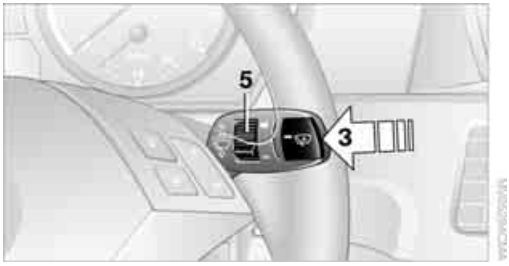
Fast wiper speed

Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system reverts to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Rain sensor

The wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the thumbwheel **5**.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**. The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper operation.◀

Cleaning windshield, headlamps* and BMW Night Vision camera*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

With the vehicle lighting switched on, the headlamps and the BMW Night Vision camera are also cleaned simultaneously at suitable intervals.

Do not use the washing mechanisms if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer fluid. Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are heated when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Sports Wagon: Rear window wiper

1 Intermittent mode. When reverse gear is engaged, continuous operation is switched on automatically

2 Cleaning the rear window

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. For this reason, keep it away from ignition sources and store only in the closed original container out of reach of children. Otherwise, there is the danger of bodily injury. Always observe the instructions for use provided on the containers.◀

Filler neck for washer fluid

Only add washer fluid with the engine cooled down to exclude contact with hot engine components. Otherwise there is a danger of fire and to personal safety if the fluid is spilled.◀

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling.◀

Capacity

Sedan:
Approx. 3.2 US quarts/3 liters, with headlamp washer system* approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

Sports Wagon: approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

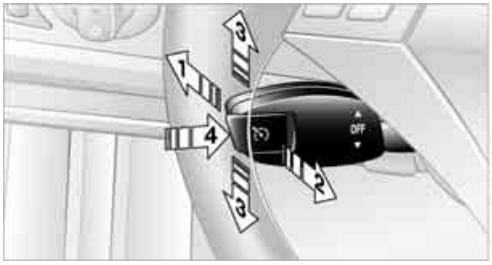
Cruise control*

The concept

The cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column. To maintain the specified speed, the system brakes if the engine braking effect is not sufficient on a downhill grade. Speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g., when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, lose road surface, and poor visibility. Otherwise you could loose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

One lever for all functions



1 Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

2 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

3 Interrupting and deactivating system

4 Resuming stored speed

Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

Press lever to resistance point, arrow **1**:
The speed currently being driven is maintained and stored. The display **1** in the speedometer, see below, indicates this regulated speed. Every time you press the lever, the vehicle's speed increases by roughly 1 mph/1 km/h.

Press lever to resistance point for a longer time:
The vehicle accelerates without pressure on

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

the accelerator pedal. The system maintains and stores your current speed as soon as you release the lever.

Press the lever beyond the resistance point:
The speed is increased to the next fives position in the mph display or the next tens position in the km/h display.

Press and hold the lever beyond the resistance point:
The vehicle accelerates more quickly.

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow **2**:
Functions are the same as **1**; the speed is reduced.

Interrupting system

Press the lever up or down, arrow **3**: The display **1** in the speedometer changes color.

In addition, the system is interrupted:

- when you apply the brakes, even with the parking brake
- when you shift very slowly, when you shift the manual transmission into idling mode, or when you shift the automatic transmission into the N position
- when DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated
- when the DSC comes on

Resuming stored speed

Press button **4**:
The stored speed is resumed and maintained.

Deactivating system

- Press the lever up or down twice, arrow **3**
- Switch off the ignition

The speed stored in the memory is deleted.

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Stored speed

2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

Active cruise control*

With active cruise control you can select a desired speed which is then automatically maintained when driving on open roadways and is varied to maintain a selected distance setting to slower moving vehicles ahead.

Active cruise control represents a technological advance over the familiar cruise control and is a welcome relief from the constant adjustment of speed that can accompany driving in traffic on freeways or other high-speed thoroughfares. Especially on longer trips and in traffic congestion, the system can reduce fatigue and tension, while increasing your enjoyment of driving. Please use it safely and responsibly.

In addition to holding a steady cruising speed, if you encounter slower vehicles ahead, active cruise control will, within limits, adjust your vehicle's speed automatically so that you can flow with the traffic without having to make constant adjustments. If, for example, while cruising at the selected speed, you begin to approach a slower vehicle ahead of you in the same lane, the system will reduce your vehicle's speed to the same as that of the vehicle ahead to maintain your selected distance setting. You can vary the following distance, which will vary with speed. Based on your selected distance setting, the system automatically decreases the throttle setting and lightly applies the brakes if necessary. In addition, if the vehicle ahead of you slows to a complete stop, the system can

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

follow this action within the given scope and can also accelerate from a complete stop if the vehicle ahead of you drives off again shortly thereafter. During braking, your vehicle brake lamps will automatically illuminate to alert a following driver to take action. In addition, it may be necessary for your vehicle to downshift the automatic transmission to maintain the distance setting selected. As soon as the road in front of you has no moving vehicles, the system will accelerate to your desired speed. This set speed is also maintained on downhill grades, however the vehicle speed can drop below the set speed when driving uphill if the engine output is not sufficient.

Active cruise control cannot detect stop signs, red lights, or any object that is stopped or is blocking the road.
Active cruise control is not and must not be used as a collision avoidance/warning system. Since this active cruise control system is a new technology and operates differently from conventional cruise control systems which you may be accustomed to, it is necessary that you read all of the pages relating to this system before use. Carefully read and observe the information on the system limitations beginning on page 71 to obtain a good command of the system and its range of applications.◀

Brake pedal feel

When the system brakes and you also depress the brake pedal, a somewhat different braking feel results.

Professional* navigation system

If a navigation DVD is in the drive, refer to page 132, within limits the system adjusts the accelerating and braking behavior of the vehicle to the road you are driving on.

To ensure that the system is informed of the current course of the road, always use the latest navigation DVD if possible.◀

When the vehicle position is unknown, e.g. when you leave the map area, this influence of the navigation system is not available.

Applications

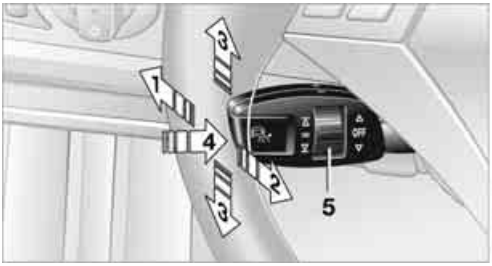
Please try the system first during sparse traffic and clear road conditions so that you can get used to the system. After you have experience and understand the system, only then use it during normal traffic.

As with conventional cruise control systems, active cruise control in no way reduces or substitutes for the driver's own personal experience, responsibility, alertness and awareness in adjusting speed, braking or otherwise controlling the vehicle. The driver should decide when to use the system on the basis of road, traffic, visibility, and weather conditions. Active cruise control is intended for use on highway-type roadways where traffic is moving relatively smoothly as well as in slow-moving traffic. Do not use the system in city driving; in complex driving situations; heavy traffic such as during rush hour; on curvy, winding roads, slippery roads or roads with sharp curves such as highway off-ramps; during inclement weather such as snow, strong rain or fog; or when entering interchanges, service/parking areas or toll booths. It is also important to regulate your vehicle's speed and distance setting within applicable legal limits. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary, especially when the system is actively following a vehicle in front of you. Otherwise, driving conditions can result which lead to a violation of the law or elevated risk of an accident.

The minimum initial activation speed is 20 mph/ 30 km/h, and the maximum speed is 110 mph/ 180 km/h. However, you can also activate the system while stopped, refer to While stopped, page 69.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

One lever for all functions



1 Storing and increasing desired speed

2 Storing and reducing desired speed

3 Interrupting, refer to page 69, or deactivating system, refer to page 69

4 Activating stored desired speed and distance, refer to page 69, or driving off, refer to While stopped, page 69

5 Selecting distance to vehicle driving ahead, refer to page 68

Storing current speed

Tap the lever, arrow **1**, or briefly pull it, arrow **2**.

The system stores the current vehicle speed. It is indicated on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

Increasing desired speed

Press or tap the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is displayed.
The speed then displayed is stored and achieved on a clear road.

▷ Each time the lever is tapped to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

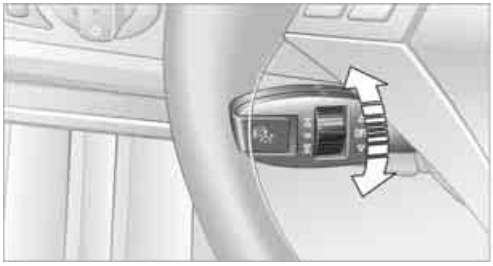
▷ Each time the lever is tapped beyond the resistance point, the desired speed increases to the next fives position in the mph speedometer display or the next tens position in the km/h speedometer display.

Reducing desired speed

Pull the lever, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is displayed.

These functions are operated in the same manner as increasing your desired speed.

Selecting distance



▷ Briefly press rocker switch downward: Increase distance.

▷ Briefly press rocker switch upward: Reduce distance.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Distance 1, closest

Distance 2

Distance 3

Distance 4, farthest
This distance is set when you activate the system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Use good judgment to select the appropriate following distance, given road conditions, traffic, applicable laws and state driving recommendations for safe following distance. Otherwise, a violation of the law or risk of an accident could result.◀

Interrupting cruise control

Press the lever upward or downward, and with the vehicle stopped also depress the brake pedal. The marking in the speedometer changes color and the distance indicator goes out.

In addition, the system is automatically interrupted:

- ▷ when you apply the vehicle brakes
- ▷ when you shift the transmission
- ▷ when DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated
- ▷ when DSC comes on
- ▷ when you apply the parking brake
- ▷ when you release the safety belt and open the driver's door with the vehicle stopped
- ▷ when the system does not recognize any objects for an extended period of time, e.g. on infrequently traveled roads without a shoulder or guard rails, or if the radar sensor is covered with dirt, refer to page 70

If the system is interrupted, then it is necessary for the driver to actively intervene by braking and steering. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.◀

Resuming stored desired speed and distance

While driving

Press button **4**.
The displays appear in the instrument cluster.

While stopped

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and apply the parking brake. Otherwise the vehicle can roll.◀

If a detected vehicle in front of you brakes to a complete stop and your vehicle has also been braked to a complete stop by the system:

- ▷ If the vehicle in front of you drives off while the marking **1** for the desired speed in the speedometer is green, your vehicle will accelerate without you having to do anything.
- ▷ If the vehicle in front of you drives off while the marking **1** is orange, you briefly depress the accelerator pedal or press button **4**. Rolling bars in the distance indicator **3** mean that the vehicle in front of you has driven off.

If you are stopped behind a vehicle with the brake pedal depressed and the system is interrupted or deactivated:

1. Press button **4** to activate a stored desired speed or select a desired speed with the lever, arrow **1** or arrow **2**.
2. Release the brake pedal.
3. If the vehicle in front of you drives off, briefly depress the accelerator pedal or press button **4**.

Deactivating system

- ▷ Press the lever upward or downward twice while driving.
- ▷ When stopped, do the same with the brake pedal depressed.
- ▷ Switch off the ignition.

The displays turn off, and the stored desired speed and distance are deleted.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Stored desired speed
   - ▷ Green: the system is active.
   - ▷ Orange: the system is interrupted.

2 Lights up yellow: vehicle detected ahead
Display also used for warnings, please read all information on warnings

3 Selected distance to vehicle ahead
The indicator lights up as soon as the system is activated

The bars roll: the vehicle in front of you has driven off

4 Brief display of stored desired speed

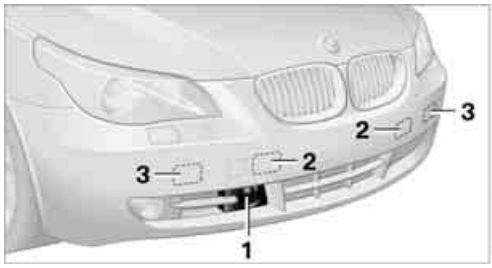
▷ If the display --- mph/--- km/h appears briefly, the conditions necessary for operation may currently not be met.◀

Warning lamps

The indicator **2** continuously flashes yellow.
The prerequisites for operating the system are no longer met as a result of ABS or DSC interventions. The system brakes until you actively take over.

The indicator **2** flashes red; a signal sounds.
The system indicates that you must brake and/or maneuver the vehicle yourself. The system cannot automatically restore the distance to the vehicle driving ahead.
However, this display cannot relieve the driver of the responsibility for adjusting the desired speed and driving style to the traffic conditions.

Radar sensors



1 Long-range sensor

2 Location of the short-range sensors behind the bumper

3 Location of the short-range sensors behind the bumper with the M Sport Package*

Heavy rain and also dirt, snow or ice can limit the detection of vehicles ahead. If needed, clean the radar sensor under the front bumper as well as the bumper area covering the short range sensors. When doing so, be particularly careful in removing layers of snow and ice.
Do not apply adhesive labels, etc., in the area of the short-range sensors.

If the sensor is not aligned properly, e.g. due to damage, the active cruise control cannot be activated.

Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the sensor is incorrectly aligned.
A message is displayed if the system fails.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- ▷ ”NF3 ACC2SCU 003YK04001 0000
- ▷ BV8SRS24

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC

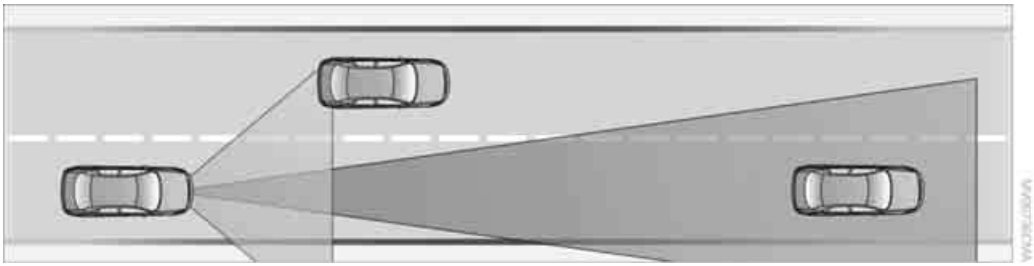
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

System limitations



As with conventional cruise control systems, active cruise control in no way diminishes or substitutes for the driver's own personal responsibility, alertness and awareness in adjusting speed, braking or otherwise controlling the vehicle. The driver should decide when to use the system on the basis of road, traffic, visibility, and weather conditions. Active cruise control is intended for use on highway-type roadways where traffic is moving relatively smoothly. Do not use this system in city driving; in complex driving situations; on curvy, winding roads, slippery roads or roads with sharp curves such as highway off-ramps; during inclement weather such as snow, strong rain or fog; or when entering interchanges, service/parking areas or toll booths. It is also important to regulate your vehicle's speed and distance setting within applicable legal limits. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary, especially when the system is actively following a vehicle in front of you.◀

Always remember that the range and ability of the system do have physical limitations. For example, the system may not detect vehicles driving ahead if they suddenly brake heavily in stop-and-go traffic during acceleration. The system will not apply the brakes or slow your vehicle when a very slow-moving vehicle, stopped vehicle or stationary object is in the lane ahead of you, for example when approaching a traffic light or parked vehicle or when a vehicle is stalled in your lane. Also, the system does not react to oncoming traffic, pedestrians or other types of potential traffic such as a rider on horseback. It is also possible that the system may not detect smaller moving objects such as motorcycles or bicycles. Be especially alert when encountering any of these situations as the system will neither automatically brake, nor provide a warning to you. Also, be aware that every decrease in the distance setting allows your vehicle to come closer to a vehicle in front of you and requires a heightened amount of alertness.◀

The system cannot allow the vehicle to drive off automatically in situations that make driving off considerably more difficult, e.g., on steep uphill grades, with a heavy trailer or before raised areas in the road.

Near radio astronomy stations, the system radar is deactivated at speeds under 20 mph/ 30 km/h due to legal regulations.

Be certain to interrupt the system when you pull into an exit lane for a highway offramp.◀

Also, vehicles traveling in a staggered manner on a highway may cause a delay in the system's

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

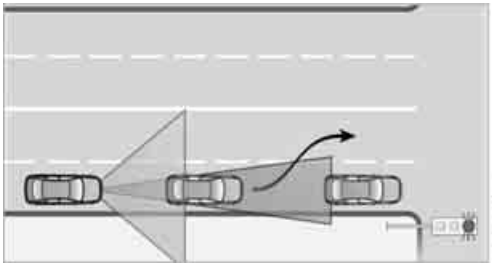
reaction to a vehicle in front of you or may cause the system to react to a vehicle that is actually in the lane next to yours. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary.

In addition, the system is interrupted whenever the driver applies the vehicle brakes, shifts the transmission from drive/D to neutral/N, or deactivates DSC. After any interruption, the system will no longer automatically activate the vehicle brakes, which means the driver must intervene and resume manual braking. You should then reactivate the system only when you are fully aware of the prior speed and distance settings.◀

Active cruise control may brake when you reduce the stored desired speed; however, the driver must constantly monitor traffic and intervene if necessary.

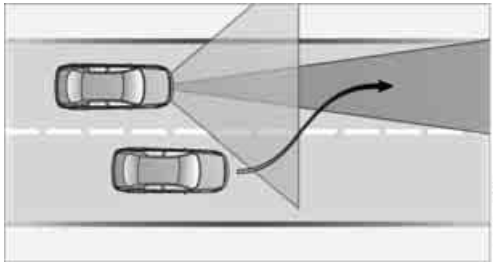
When you switch off the engine or ignition, active cruise control is fully switched off, too, and any settings you have selected are canceled.

Unexpected lane change



If a vehicle in front of you is behind a stopped vehicle and unexpectedly changes lanes, you must react yourself, as the system does not react to stopped vehicles.

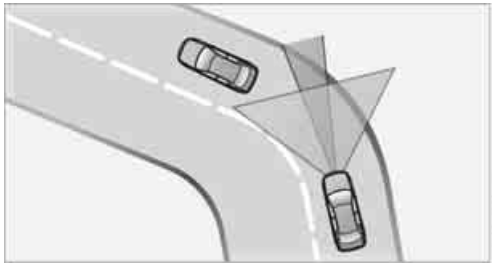
Swerving vehicles



When a vehicle swerves out of adjacent lanes into your lane, the system does not detect the vehicle until it is completely in your lane.

When a vehicle ahead suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to restore the selected distance automatically. This also applies to great differences in speed between your vehicle and vehicles ahead, e.g. when quickly approaching a truck. Once the system has established that a vehicle is indeed in front of you, it will indicate that you must brake and/or maneuver the vehicle yourself. Take action yourself, otherwise there is a risk of an accident.◀

Behavior in curves



If the selected desired speed for a curve is too high, the system reduces the speed within a curve. However, it cannot detect curves in advance. Therefore, select a suitable speed at the start of a curve.

Because of the limited range of the system, it is possible that in curves or on the peaks and valleys of hilly roads, a vehicle ahead may be recognized late, or not at all. Therefore, it is up to the driver to select a speed that is prudent in view of the curves and terrain of the roadway.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In approaching a curve, it is possible that active cruise control might react briefly to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. In addition, the system can sense if your vehicle is in a curve and may not accelerate. If your vehicle decelerates in either case, you can choose to overcome the deceleration by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal.

Driver interventions and your responsibility

Anytime the driver presses down on the accelerator pedal, any braking action by the system is interrupted and the distance indicator goes out until the pedal is fully released. As soon as you fully release the accelerator, the system will again control your cruising speed and distance setting. While driving with the system activated, resting your foot on the accelerator pedal will cause the system not to brake even when necessary. Be certain that floormats or other objects on the vehicle floor do not interfere with movement of the accelerator pedal.◀

While active cruise control is capable of braking your vehicle automatically when you approach a slower vehicle ahead, it is important to be aware that the ability of the system to apply the brakes is also limited, e.g. when you reduce your desired speed sharply. It uses only a portion of braking system capacity and does not utilize the full capacity of the vehicle braking system. Therefore, the system cannot decrease your speed due to large differences in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Example: when you approach a vehicle traveling at a much lower speed than your own speed such as approaching a toll booth or when a much slower vehicle cuts in front of you at close range.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Controls Overview

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock, date

1 Time, outside temperature and date

2 Odometer and trip odometer

3 Press button:

- ▷ with ignition switched on, trip odometer is reset
- ▷ with ignition switched off, time, outside temperature, and odometer are briefly displayed.

From radio readiness the outside temperature and the time are displayed.

Date retrieval:
Press CHECK button on turn signal lever, refer to page 81.

Time and date setting, refer to page 78.

You can set the unit of measure °F or °C on the Control Display, refer to Units of measure on page 76.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

⚠ Even at temperatures above +37 °F / +3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g., on bridges and sections of road in the shade, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

Tachometer

Avoid engine speeds in the white-striped advance warning field, arrow **1**, if possible.

Never force the engine speed up into the red warning field, see arrow **2**. Never operate the engine with the needle in the red overspeed zone of the gauge. At high revs in this range, the flow of fuel is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 214.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Energy Control

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 US gal/ 70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.1 US gal/8 liters.
550i: approx. 2.6 US gal/10 liters reserve capacity.
You will find information on refueling on page 200.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the remaining range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ No information

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

To reset average speed: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To reset average fuel consumption: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

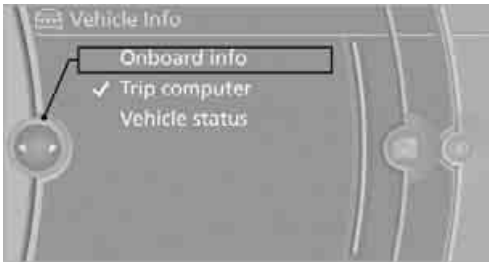
For different routes

You can display the average speed and average consumption for two different routes on the Control Display, refer to the following and to Trip computer*.

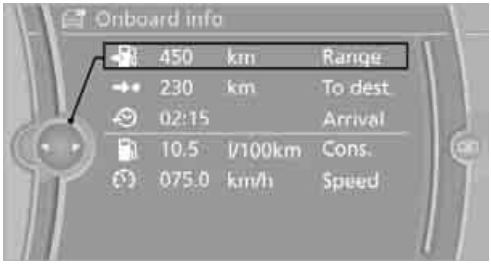
Displays on the Control Display

You can also call up the computer via iDrive. For operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

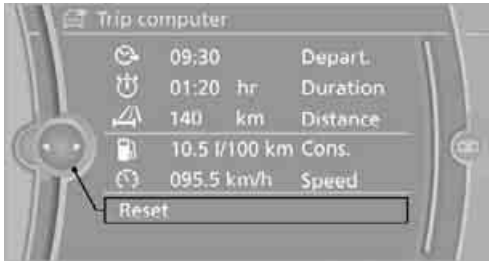


Displays on the "Onboard info":



- Cruising range
- Distance from destination
- Estimated time of arrival, provided that a destination was entered in the navigation system*, refer to page 133.

Displays on the "Trip computer":



- Departure time
- Trip duration
- Trip distance

Both displays show:

- The average speed and
- the average fuel consumption.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

You can reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. To confirm your selection, press the controller again.

Resetting the Trip computer

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset"
   All values are reset.

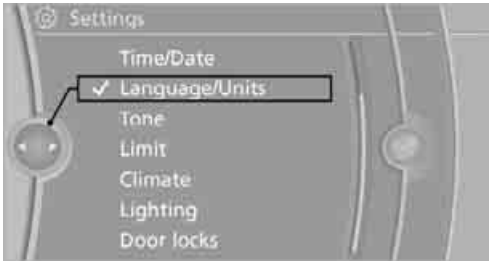
Setting the units of measure

You can change the units for fuel consumption, route/distance, temperature and pressure.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"



3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

Your BMW Service Advisor can determine your vehicle's current service requirements by reading out the data stored in the remote control.◀

Additional information

You can view more detailed information by using the Control Display, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

You can request more detailed information on every entry:

Select the entry and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

Symbols

No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 79, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

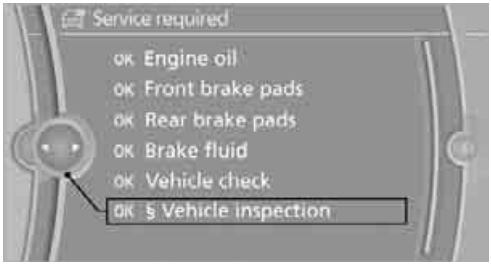
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Service required"

4. "§ Vehicle inspection"



5. Open the menu for entering the deadline.
6. "Date:"
7. Turn the controller until the desired month is displayed, and then press the controller.
8. Set the year in the same manner.

   The date is stored.

To exit the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

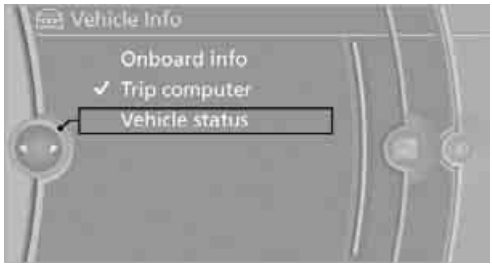
More information on the BMW Maintenance System can be found on page 215.

Automatic Service Request*

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your BMW center prior to a service due date. You can check when your BMW center was notified.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Options"
4. "Last Service Request"

Clock

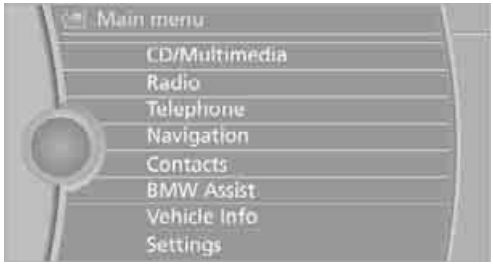
The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

Setting the time

To set the 12h/24h mode, refer to Setting the time format below.

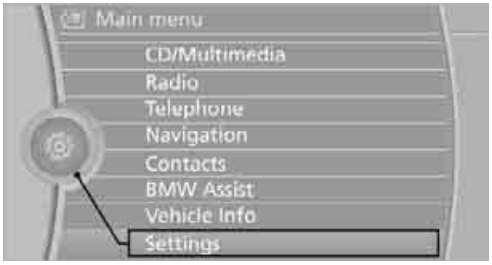
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   The main menu is displayed.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

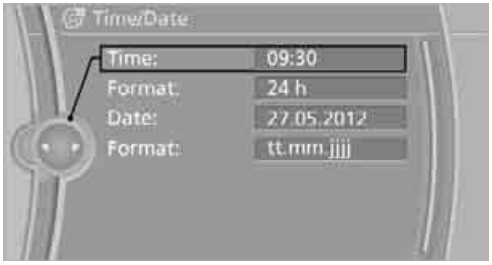
2. "Settings"



Setting the time

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"



3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed, and then press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The time format is stored.

Date

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

Setting date

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, refer to Setting date format below.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Create the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting date format

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"

4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. This kind of Check Control message consists of indicator

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, and if necessary an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

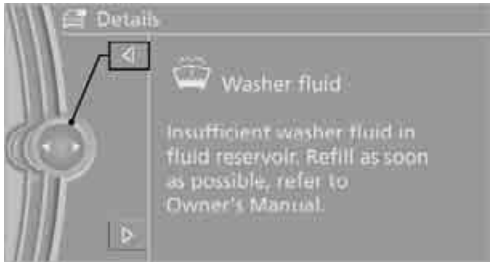
Indicator and warning lamps

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

⚠ means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol continues to be visible even when the Check Control message disappears after a short time. The warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be displayed later, also refer to page 81.

Explanatory text messages

For most Check Control messages, you can view more information later, e.g., regarding the cause of a malfunction and how to respond; refer to the information provided below.

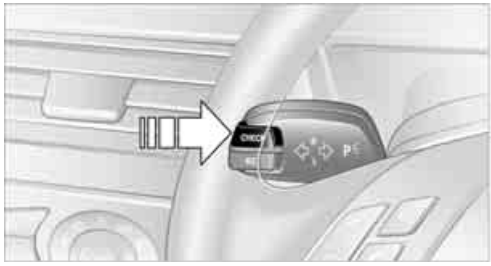


In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

To hide the information temporarily:
Move the controller to the left.

To hide the information:
Confirm the information.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the CHECK button on turn signal lever.

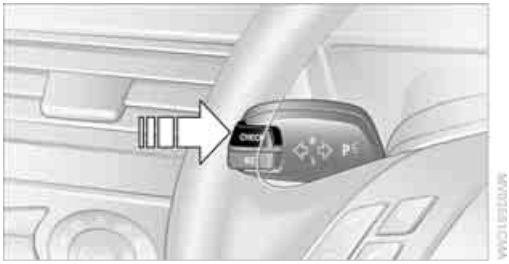
Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If a number of malfunctions occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

Other messages are hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Press the button longer:
   The first stored message is displayed.



2. Press the button:
   When the button is pressed again, a different message is displayed.

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"

4. Select the text message.

Displays after completion of trip

Malfunction reports generated during the trip are shown consecutively when you switch off the ignition.

Before the display disappears, you can display the messages once again. Press the CHECK button for approx. 2 seconds. If several messages are present, you can continue to press the CHECK button to view them in succession.

The display goes out

▷ after a short time

▷ when you press the CHECK button again for approx. 2 seconds

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"
3. "Limit:"

4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

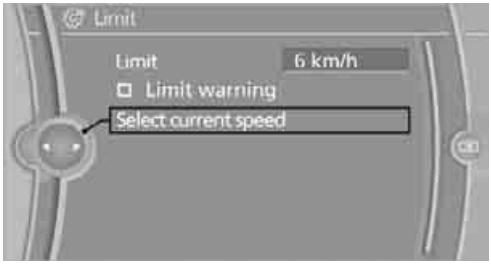
Applying your current speed as limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Select current speed"



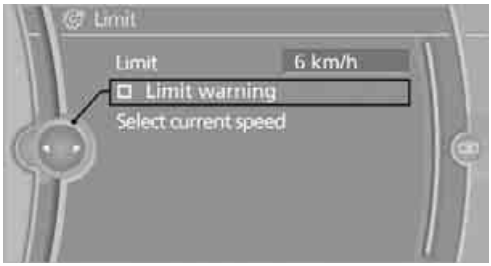
4. Press the controller.

The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"
3. "Limit warning"



4. Press the controller.

The limit warning is switched on.

Settings on Control Display

Language on Control Display

Setting the language

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"

4. Select the desired language.

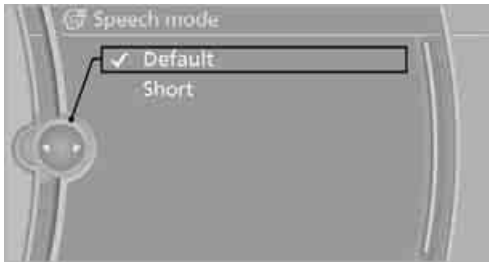
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

Switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the desired dialog.



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Warning signal volume

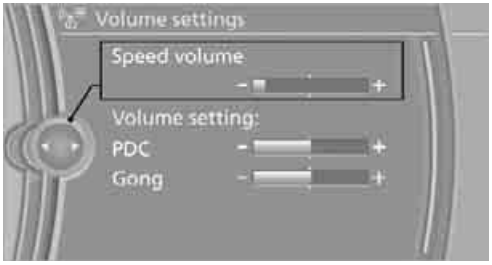
You can raise or lower the volume of the warning signals, e.g., the "Fasten safety belt" reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output. The warning signals have a fixed minimum and maximum volume that cannot be dropped below or exceeded.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Volume settings"



- "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control
- "PDC": volume of the PDC* signal tone relative to the entertainment sound output
- "Gong": volume of the signal tone, e.g., for the "Fasten safety belt" reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"

4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use. In bright conditions, for example, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sounds for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

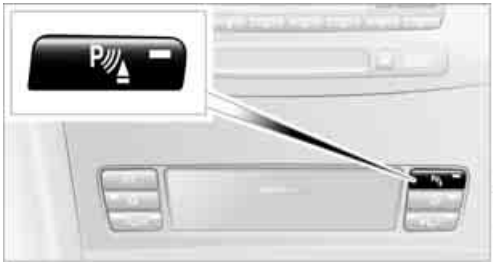
⚠ PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise the physical circumstances would mean that the system warning was too late.◀

Automatic activation

The system starts to operate approx. one second after you shift into reverse or move the selector lever into position R with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Wait this short time before driving off.

Manual activation



Press the button, the LED lights up.

Manual deactivation

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Automatic deactivation

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, the position is correspondingly indicated by an interval tone. Thus, an object detected to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a signal tone from the left rear speaker, etc. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To prevent this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaning jets for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

PDC with visual warning*

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before a signal tone sounds. The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

System limits

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with tow bars and trailer couplings, or thin and wedge-shaped objects, etc. Low objects already displayed, e.g. curbs, can also disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before or after a continuous tone already sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g., ledges, cannot be detected. For this reason, drive with care; otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury or property damage.
Loud sources of sound, inside and outside the vehicle, could drown out the PDC signal tone.◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely refer to page 126.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

When braking during curves or when braking during a lane change, driving stability and steering response are improved further.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system produces maximum braking force boosting and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking maneuvers. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake for the duration of the full brake application.

Adaptive brake assistant*

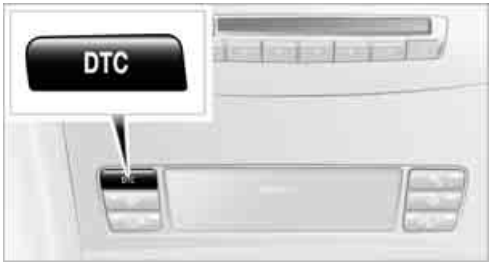
In conjunction with the active cruise control with the stop-and-go function, the adaptive brake assistant ensures that the brake responds even more quickly during braking with the brake assistant.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when starting off and accelerating. The system also identifies unstable driving conditions, such as a loss of traction at the rear of the vehicle or sliding of the vehicle in its front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions in the individual wheels.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not restrict the additional safety margin with a risky driving style, as otherwise there is a risk of an accident.◀

Deactivating DSC



Press the button until the DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up, but not longer

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

than approx. 10 seconds. DTC Dynamic Traction Control and DSC are deactivated together. Stabilizing and drive output promoting actions are no longer executed. In addition, the stability promoting intervention of the active steering* is deactivated, refer to page 92.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up:
DSC is deactivated.

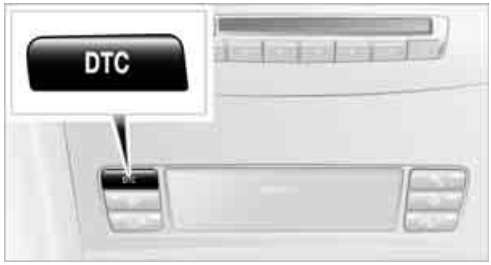
DTC Dynamic Traction Control

DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g., unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- When driving on snowy inclines, in slush, or on unplowed, snow-covered road surfaces
- When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow or on loose ground
- When driving with snow chains*

Activating DTC



Press the button briefly; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DTC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up:
DTC is activated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

xDrive*

xDrive is the 4-wheel drive system of your BMW. The combined effects of xDrive and DSC further optimize the traction and dynamic driving characteristics. The 4-wheel drive system xDrive variably distributes the drive torque to the front and rear axle depending on the driving situation and prevailing road conditions.

HDC Hill Descent Control*

The concept

HDC is a system for driving downhill in steep terrain. This system reduces vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, thus allowing you to maintain even better control of your BMW under these conditions. The vehicle moves at approximately twice walking speed without active intervention from the driver.

HDC is available for activation at vehicle speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

down steep hills with a speed below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h, the vehicle reduces speed automatically down to approximately twice normal walking speed, approx. 7 mph/12 km/h, and then keeps this speed constant.

You can use the accelerator or brakes to vary this automatically controlled speed within a range extending from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h to 15 mph/25 km/h.
You can specify a target speed within the same range by using the lever of the cruise control*.

Activating HDC

Use the button on the steering wheel.

Deactivating HDC

Use the button on the steering wheel; the HDC display goes out.

HDC is automatically deactivated at speeds greater than approximately 37 mph/60 km/h.

Using HDC

Manual transmission:
Use HDC in low gears and reverse gear.

Automatic transmission:
You can use HDC in every drive position.

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Display for target speed

2 HDC display

Malfunction in driving-stability control systems

The warning lamp for the brake system lights up yellow, together with the indicator lamps for ABS, DSC and Tire Pressure Monitor or Flat Tire Monitor. A message appears on the Control Display. The driving-stability control systems have failed. While you may continue, you should remember to proceed cautiously and drive defensively while avoiding full brake applications. The Tire Pressure Monitor or the Flat Tire Monitor is also malfunctioning. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The DSC indicator lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the DSC and DTC. The stabilizing actions are no longer available. The vehicle remains operational. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

The brake system warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The brake assistant is defective. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

Drive-off assistant

The drive-off assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The parking brake is not required for this purpose.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake.
2. Release the brake and begin to drive immediately.

After releasing the brake, begin to drive immediately; otherwise, the drive-off assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 2 seconds and your vehicle will start to roll backward.◀

Dynamic Drive*

The concept

Dynamic Drive minimizes body roll and optimizes vehicle stability during cornering and evasive maneuvers.

Dynamic Drive is based on active stabilizers on the front and rear axles. Suspension compliance adapts to suit driving conditions, varying from performance-oriented during cornering to smooth and comfort-oriented when the vehicle is proceeding in a straight line. During vehicle operation, the system continuously runs through closed-loop control cycles lasting only fractions of a second.

The system assumes operational status each time you start the engine.

Sports Wagon: self-leveling suspension

Malfunction

The warning lamp for self-leveling suspension lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the self-leveling suspension. Stop and check the vehicle. If it is considerably lower at the rear than at the front, and possibly also on one side – rear left compared to rear right – go to the nearest BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Drive with appropriate caution in the meantime. The vehicle has reduced ground clearance and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Even if the position of the vehicle is normal, go to the nearest BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor detects a pressure loss in one tire by comparing the speeds of the individual wheels during driving.

In the event of a pressure loss, there is a change in the rolling circumference and therefore the rotation speed of the corresponding wheel. The system detects this change and reports it as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured.

The initialization must be repeated after every correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

The Flat Tire Monitor is unable to warn the driver of sudden, severe tire damage caused by external factors, nor can it identify the gradual loss of pressure that will inevitably occur in all four tires over a lengthy period of time.◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Driving with snow chains*

When you are driving with the compact wheel* the Flat Tire Monitor is unable to function.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Initializing system

The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically. The system is initialized after this activation phase.

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.◀

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"

4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization using "Reset". "Activating..." is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Start to drive.

The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. "Flat Tire Monitor active" is displayed on the Control Display.

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamp lights up red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds.

There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify damaged tire.

   If identification is not possible, contact a BMW center.◀

3. Replace the damaged wheel, refer to Changing wheels on page 226.

Run-flat tires*

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid severe braking and steering maneuvers and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 208, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents.◀

2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.◀

3. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:
   - With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or
     4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 94 miles/150 km
   - With a full load:
     4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive cautiously and do not exceed 50 mph/80 km/h or else you run the risk of causing an accident. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.

If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not con-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

tinue driving, but instead contact your BMW center.◀

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be reset at the correct tire inflation pressure.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.

▷ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences.

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g., a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, e.g., a compact wheel, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state.

"TPM" appears on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

Resetting system

▷ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically. Do not reset the system when driving with a compact wheel*.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the main menu.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Reset TPM"

5. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
6. "Reset"
7. "Yes"

Start to drive.
The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

8. After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. The system reset is completed during your drive, and can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in green and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is shown.◀

Notification of low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether your vehicle is equipped with standard tires or run-flat tires.

   You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 208.◀

Standard tires

1. If all four wheels are shown in yellow, identify the damaged tire on the vehicle.
2. Replace the damaged wheel or wheels, refer to Changing wheels on page 226.

In contrast to a compact wheel, a spare wheel is equipped with the necessary TPM electronics and also monitored after mounting and after resetting the system.

Have the tire replaced by a BMW center or a workshop informed on handling TPM which works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Run-flat tires*

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid severe braking and steering maneuvers and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 208, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents.◀
2. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:
   - With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4 persons without luggage:
approx. 95 miles/150 km

▷ With a full load:
4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
approx. 30 miles/50 km

⚠ Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center.◀

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

▷ In case of a malfunction;
have the system checked.

▷ If a wheel is mounted without TPM electronics.

▷ If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator lights up, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Active steering*

The concept

Active steering varies the turning angle of the front wheels in relation to steering wheel movements. It also varies the steering force required to turn the wheels depending on the speed at which you are driving.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

When you are driving in the low speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle increases, i.e., the steering becomes very direct. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced more and more. This improves the handling capability of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes. This stabilizing intervention is simultaneously deactivated when DSC is switched off, refer to page 85.

Malfunction

The warning lamp lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. Active steering is malfunctioning or is temporarily deactivated. At low speeds, greater steering wheel movements are required, whereas at higher speeds, the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stability-promoting intervention can also be deactivated. Proceed cautiously and drive defensively.

Deactivation

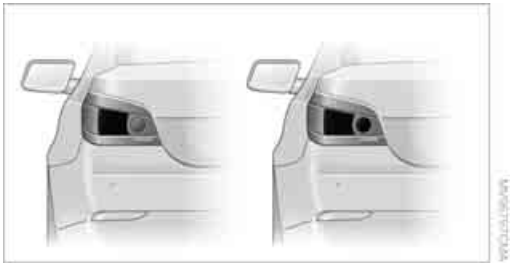
Active steering is deactivated to perform an initialization. A message indicates that the feature is deactivated. Initialization may take several minutes.

If the message does not go out during the current trip, have the system checked.

Defect

A text message appears if there is a defect. Have the system checked.

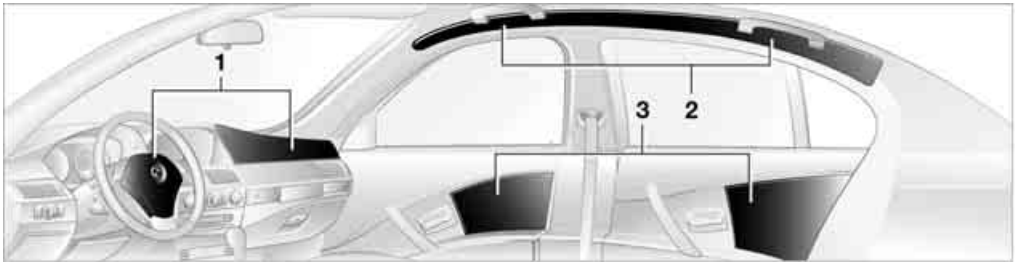
Brake force display



On the left: normal braking.

On the right: heavy braking.

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Head airbags

3 Side airbags in front and rear

Protective action

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 43.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag restraint system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the doors and the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel. Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Otherwise unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag triggering, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly by the system.

The current status of the front passenger airbag, i.e., deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags in the following.◀

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, observe the safety information and handling instructions under Transporting children safely refer to page 53.
The front and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain sitting positions; then the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. In these cases, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the sitting position, transport the corresponding person on the rear seat. Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not lay objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured.◀

Operating state of front passenger airbags

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front and side airbags on the front passenger side depending on the seat occupation. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

Most child seats are detected by the system, especially the child seats required by the NHTSA at the time the vehicle is manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.◀

- The indicator lamp does not light up if, for example, the system detects a person of sufficient size seated correctly on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated.
- The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty.
  However, the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

From radio readiness, refer to page 57, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

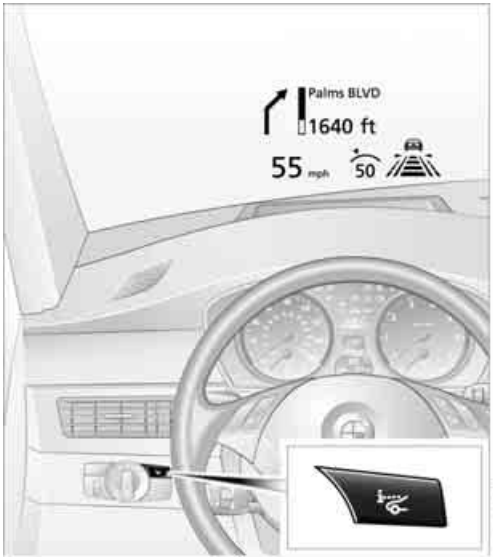
- Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- Warning lamp lights up continuously.

Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction, otherwise there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity.◀

Head-up Display*

The concept

With the Head-up Display important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g., navigation instructions. This enables you to take in this information without looking away from the road.



Switching on/off

Press the button.

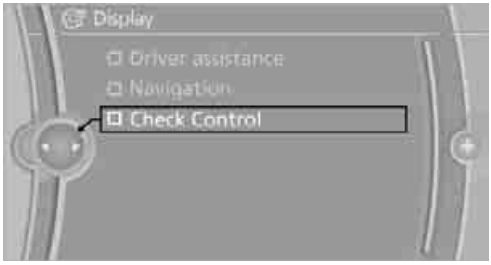
1 Navigation instructions
2 Display
  - Cruise control
  - Active cruise control
  - Lane Departure Warning
3 Speed

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting displays

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.



The information appears in the Head-up Display.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting brightness

The brightness of the display is adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.
With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the thumbwheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.
   The brightness is adjusted.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by:

- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters
- ▷ Certain seating positions
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display
- ▷ Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

If the image is distorted, please have the basic setting checked at a BMW center.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents the double images from being displayed. Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Care instructions

You can find valuable information on this topic under Care, starting on page 217.

Only clean the cover of the Head-up Display with a soft, nonabrasive cloth or with a display cleaning cloth; otherwise, you may damage it.◀

BMW Night Vision*

The concept

BMW Night Vision is a driver assistance system that is designed to provide enhanced vision for certain objects at night. This can be especially helpful for detecting people and larger animals. When objects are detected, the driver may be able to take appropriate action sooner. For example, the driver may identify and detect the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

presence of persons or animals in the road ahead or off to the sides and can be more alert, slow down or stop, blow the horn, etc. The driver can decide which actions are appropriate and then react accordingly.

A certain area in front of the vehicle is viewed by an infrared camera and a generated image is shown on the Control Display. The resulting thermal image shows the relative heat radiation of the objects present in the camera's field of view. Warmer objects appear brighter and cooler objects appear darker. Contrast is dependent on the temperature difference between the objects and the background and on the amount of heat radiation of the object itself. As a result, it is quite possible that a person is not continually recognizable as a person in shape, since the thermal radiation can be affected by different clothing which blocks heat loss. Objects with little temperature difference to the surrounding area, or little heat radiation are less noticeable, for example in cold weather.

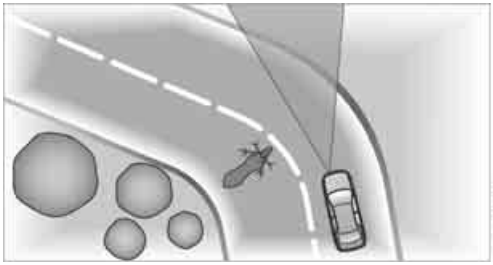
Any improvement in detection depends on many factors such as the object size and temperature compared to the surroundings, or other nearby objects, the visual recognition skills of the driver, weather conditions, and other factors.

Driving hints

With the system active, periodically but briefly, glance at the thermal image on the Control Display to notice objects that could be people or larger animals. The glance should be similar to glancing at the rear view mirror. Do not stare at the image for long periods while driving, as this will remove attention from the road. If you notice an object of interest ahead, be prepared to slow down or stop, blow the horn, or take other appropriate action.

System limits

The system is designed to supplement but not replace forward vision through the windshield. The driver is responsible for safe driving at night. BMW Night Vision is not designed to be used as a continuous viewing window for driving at night.



No system, no matter how sophisticated, can operate without limitations. BMW Night Vision operation is subject to physical and environmental limitations that will reduce the ability of the system to detect and display a clear thermal image. Some of the situations in which these limitations can occur are:

- on steep hilltops or depressions and in tight curves
- in tunnels, as the contrast is inherently low
- when the camera lens is dirty
- in dense fog, heavy rain or snowfall
- when displaying very hot objects such as transformers, car exhausts, etc.
- when the image briefly freezes during normal system adjustment.

BMW Night Vision's potential benefits can be limited by the driving style of the driver, the size and relative temperature of the detected objects, dirt or contamination on the camera lens, adverse weather like snow, rain or fog, and other factors not mentioned here. It will always be the driver's responsibility to drive at a speed and in a manner that recognizes potential hazards and adjust accordingly.
BMW Night Vision is not a substitute or replacement for the driver's responsibility to adapt to visibility and traffic conditions. The forward view illuminated by the headlamps must always be the basis for making safe driving decisions, otherwise a safety risk will result.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Activating BMW Night Vision

1. Turn the light switch to position **2** or **3**, refer to page 100.
2. With low beams switched on:
   - ▷ Press the button. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the location of the button may differ somewhat.

   - ▷ Press one of the programmable buttons on the steering wheel.

The image will be displayed on the Control Display after a few seconds. Depending on the last mode selected, either the normal or full screen image will be displayed.

Due to the system's need to adjust periodically, a still image is displayed at certain intervals for fractions of a second. This is normal and not an indication of a problem.

To prevent driving without headlamps, at a speed of more than approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and when dark, the thermal image on the Control Display is only shown when the low beams are on.

Deactivating BMW Night Vision

- ▷ Press the button.
- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Press the **MENU** button.
- ▷ Via iDrive, refer to Selecting settings.

Selecting settings

For iDrive details, refer to page 16.

1. Activate BMW Night Vision.
2. Press the controller.
3. Open the desired menu item.
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"
   - ▷ "Zoom & Curve mode"

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

To exit the menu:
The image automatically disappears after approx. 5 seconds.

Cleaning camera

The function of the camera may be affected by heavy rain and fog, dirt, snow or ice on the lens. When this occurs, the displayed image on the Control Display may become gray.

To minimize icing, the camera lens is automatically heated. However, it may be necessary to clean the camera lens manually under severe weather conditions. When doing so, cautiously

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

remove any debris, ice or snow. To avoid damage to the lens, do not use sharp or abrasive instruments to clean ice, snow, or dirt off the lens.

When the windshield is cleaned with the headlamps on, the camera lens area is automatically sprayed as well. Refer to page 64.

Lane Departure Warning*

The concept

This system warns you from a speed of approx. 40 mph/70 km/h when the vehicle is leaving the lane you are currently in on roads with lane limit lines. You feel this due to a slight vibration of the steering wheel.
The system does not warn you if you signal before leaving the lane.
It is best to use the system on well-developed roads and freeways.

Switching on/off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

- ▷ The two lines **1** indicate that the system is activated.
- ▷ The two arrows **2** mean that the system has detected one or two lane demarcation lines from a speed of approx. 40 mph/70 km/h and warns accordingly.

If you activate the system below a speed of approx. 40 mph/70 km/h, a message will appear stating that the system is not active until this speed is reached.

A warning will be canceled:

- ▷ after approx. 3 seconds
- ▷ if you return to your lane
- ▷ if you brake heavily
- ▷ if you signal

System limits

The Lane Departure Warning cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining the course of the road. If the system issues a warning, do not move the steering wheel with unnecessary severity, as otherwise you could lose control of the vehicle.◀

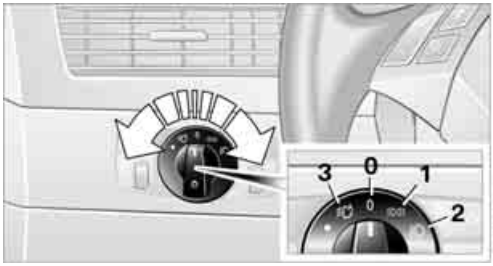
The function of the system may be limited in the following example situations:

- ▷ in heavy fog, rain or snowfall
- ▷ with worn-away, poorly visible demarcation lines, or lines that run together or apart or are unclear, e.g., in road construction areas
- ▷ when demarcation lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or a great deal of water
- ▷ in tight curves or on narrow roads
- ▷ when demarcation lines are not white
- ▷ when demarcation lines are covered by objects
- ▷ when driving up close behind a vehicle driving ahead
- ▷ with bright oncoming light
- ▷ when the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, vignettes, etc., in the area of the inside rearview mirror

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*

2 Low beams and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lamps*, welcome lamps, Adaptive Light Control* and High-beam Assistant*

If you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is switched off when the light switch is in position **2** or **3**. The daytime running lamps have already been switched off at the same time as the ignition.

For this reason, switch on the parking lamps as needed, switch position **1**; otherwise, the vehicle is not lit.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

▷ The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the roadside parking lamps on one side, refer to page 102.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control*

In switch position **3**, the system activates the low beams and switches them on or off in response to changes in ambient light conditions, for instance, in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. Adaptive Light Control* is active. The LED next to the symbol lights up when the low beams are on. You can activate the daytime running lamps, refer to page 101. In the above-mentioned situations, the system then switches to the low beams.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

▷ The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps*.◀

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog of hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low beams manually under these conditions.◀

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when parking the vehicle, then when you unlock the vehicle, the parking lamps and interior lighting remain illuminated for a brief time.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Welcome light"

The welcome lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

If you activate the headlamp flasher after switching off the ignition with the lamps switched off, the low beams come on and remain on for a certain time. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting:"
4. Set or deactivate the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps*

The daytime running lamps light up in positions **0**, **1** and **3**. If the light switch remains in position **1**, the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps*

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

The daytime running lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Light Control*

The concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

In tight curves at speeds up to approx. 45 mph/ 70 km/h, e.g. on mountainous roads or when negotiating curves, turning lamps are switched on that light up the inside area of the curve.

Activating Adaptive Light Control

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch into position **3**, refer to page 100.

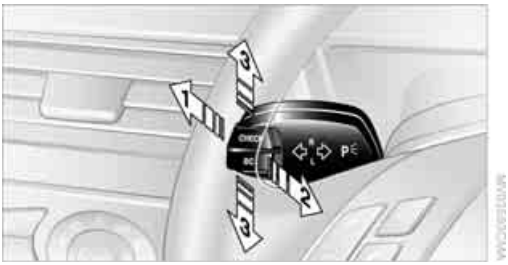
The turning lamps are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control directs light towards the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill. When driving in reverse, only the turning

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

lamps are active and illuminate the outer area of curves.

High beams/ roadside parking lamps



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps*

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the resistance point, arrow **3**.

▷ The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction up to the resistance point, arrow **3**.

High-beam Assistant*

The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off. A sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror controls the process. The assistant makes sure that the high beams are switched on whenever traffic conditions permit. This relieves you of the burden of constantly switching back and forth and simultaneously provides you with the best possible visibility. Naturally, you can intervene at any time to switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 100.
2. With the low beams switched on, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the High-beam Assistant is activated. The system automatically switches between high beams and low beams, reacting to oncoming traffic, vehicles ahead of you, and sufficiently lit areas, e.g., in built-up zones.

Manually switching between high beams and low beams

If you wish or the situation requires, you can intervene at any time.

▷ If the High-beam Assistant has switched on the high beams, but you wish to use the low beams, just switch on the low beams with the turn signal lever. This deactivates the High-beam Assistant.
In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.

▷ If the High-beam Assistant has switched on the low beams, but you wish to use the high beams, simply switch on the high beams as usual. This deactivates the system and it is up to you to switch back to low beams.
In order to reactivate the system, briefly

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.

- When the low beams are on, use the headlamp flasher as usual.

System limits

The High-beam Assistant is designed to maximize the amount of time that high beams can be safely used and to quickly switch back to low beams when traffic approaches. The system cannot completely replace driver intervention when unusual conditions are encountered. For this reason, switch to low beams when circumstances so dictate. Failure to do so can pose a safety risk.◀

Below are a few examples of situations in which the system may not react or may only function to a limited degree, requiring personal intervention:

- in extremely unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation
- in sensing road users with poor inherent illumination such as pedestrians, cyclists, equestrians, horse-drawn vehicles, railroad or shipping traffic close to the road, and at deer crossings
- in tight curves, on steep crests or dips, with cross-traffic, or with partially hidden oncoming traffic on divided highways
- in poorly illuminated areas and in the presence of highly reflective signs
- in the low speed range
- when the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, decals, etc., in the area of the inside rearview mirror
- when the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror with a cloth slightly moistened with glass cleaner

Moreover, no system can operate without limitations. High-beam Assistant operation is subject to conditions that may reduce the system's ability to recognize the difference between actual vehicle head lamps or tail lamps and, for example, highly reflective signs, markers, and streetlights. To be on the safe side, the system may periodically interpret these situations as conditions that require low beams. Below are some of the situations in which premature switching to low beams can occur:

- approaching large and/or highly reflective signs
- approaching certain lights, such as driveway lighting and porch lights
- approaching certain traffic signals
- approaching large reflective markers

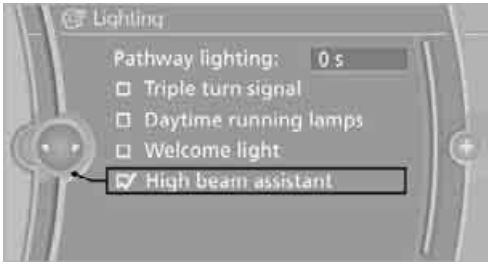
In these situations, the system may interpret the above conditions as a vehicle ahead requiring a switch to low beams. When the conditions return to normal, the system will reactivate the high beams.

The High-beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's responsibility for complying with state laws on high-beam switching or for adapting to visibility and traffic conditions.

Switching off via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "High beam assistant"



High beam assistant is activated and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

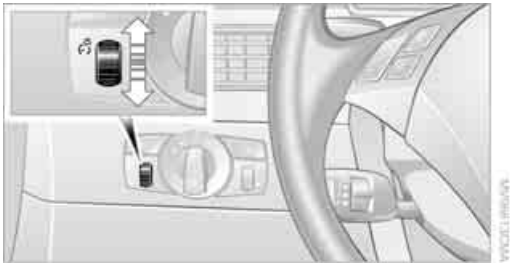
Fog lamps*

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

The fog lamps are switched off whenever the high beams are switched on.

▷ If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

Instrument lighting



You can control the lighting intensity by using the thumbwheel.

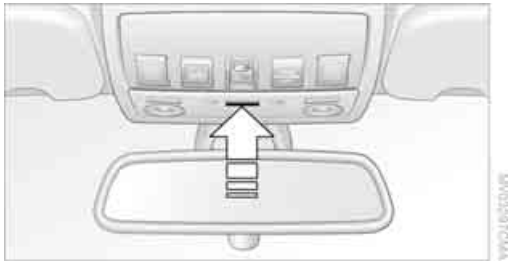
Interior lamps

Control of the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, courtesy lamps* and the cargo bay lamps* is automatic.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lights are provided in the outside rearview mirrors to illuminate the exterior area around the doors.

▷ To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 57.◀

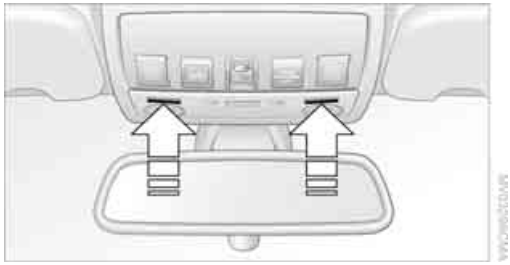
Switching interior lamps on and off manually



Press the button.

If the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting and courtesy lamps are to remain switched off continually, press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

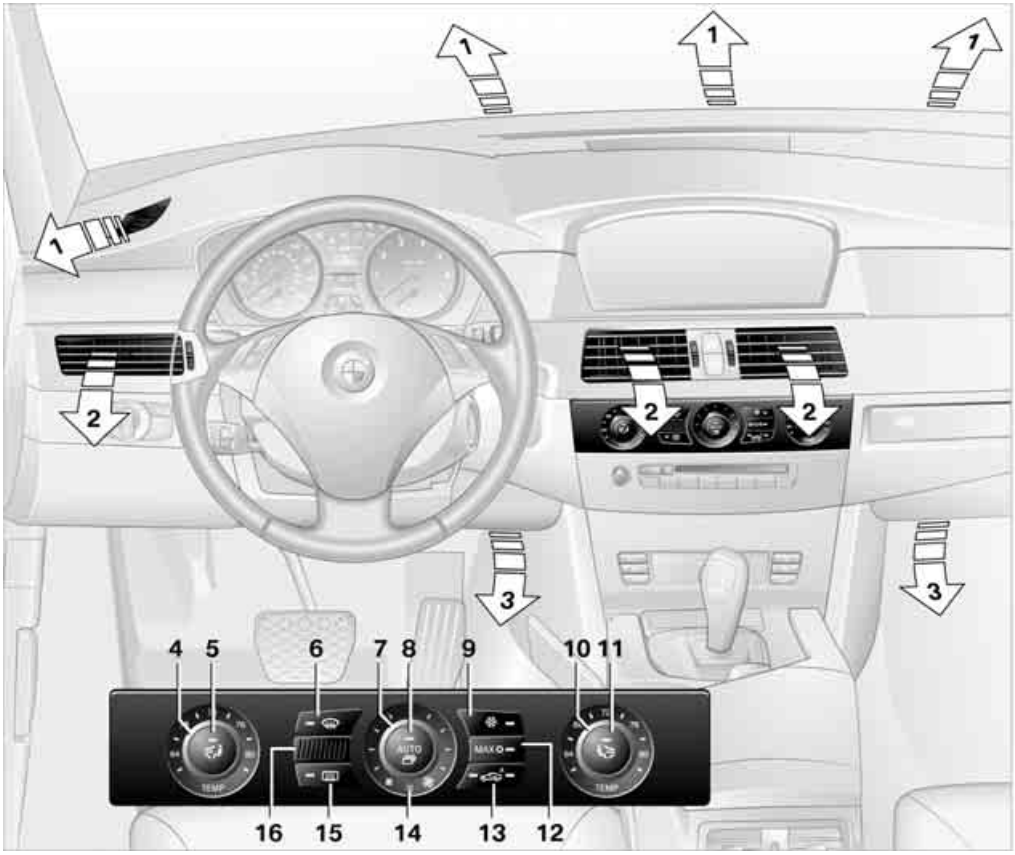


Reading lamps are located in the front and rear adjacent to the interior lamps. Press the button to switch the lamps on and off.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Climate

Automatic climate control



1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body region, refer to Front ventilation on page 108

3 Air to footwell

4 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

5 Manual air distribution, driver's side

6 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

7 Manual air volume, switching off automatic climate control, residual heat utilization

8 AUTO program

9 Switching cooling function on and off manually

10 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

11 Manual air distribution, front passenger side

12 Maximum cooling

13 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

14 LED for residual heat utilization and parked-car ventilation system

15 Rear window defroster

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

16 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

The current setting for the air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.

Comfortable interior climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature comfortable for you.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 27.

AUTO program

The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air volume and air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body and in the footwell. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

The cooling function is switched on along with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

Intensity of the AUTO program

You can adjust the intensity of the AUTO program by repeatedly pressing the AUTO button. The respective current setting is briefly displayed on the Control Display when the button is pressed.

Select the intensity of the AUTO program:

▷ – Low

▷ – Medium

▷ – High

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control adjusts this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

▷ When changing between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.◀

In the highest setting you activate the maximum heating output, regardless of the outside temperature.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

To do this, also switch on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster

The rear window defroster switches off after a while. Depending on the vehicle equipment, upper wires are used as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Air volume, manual

You can adjust the air volume by turning. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

The air volume is reduced to save battery power. The display stays the same.

Air distribution, manual

You can route the air flowing out into the vehicle interior via various programs, separately for the driver's and passenger's side:

- ▷ Upper body region
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell
- ▷ Footwell
- ▷ Driver's side: windows and footwell

Selecting program

Press the button repeatedly until the desired air distribution of the respective program is shown on the Control Display.

Switching cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before also reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This function is only available when the engine is running.

The cooling function helps to avoid condensation on the window surfaces or to quickly remove them.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is also switched on with the AUTO program.

Maximum cooling

Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F / 0 °C and with the engine running.

At the lowest temperature, the automatic climate control switches into recirculated-air mode. The maximum air volume flows out of the vents for the upper body. Therefore, open these vents for maximum cooling.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode

You can respond to pollutants or unpleasant odors in the immediate environment by suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. During AUC operation, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

By pressing the button repeatedly, you can request three operating modes:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Right LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off the supply as needed.
- ▷ Left LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

⚠ Should the windows fog up in the recirculated-air mode, press the AUTO button or switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume if necessary.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously.◀

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g., while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

1. Switch off the engine.
2. Turn to the right, refer to arrow.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine
- ▷ with engine at operating temperature
- ▷ with sufficient battery voltage

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

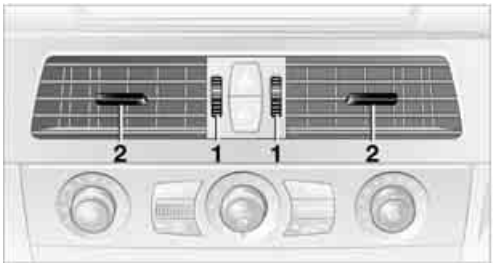
From radio readiness the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

Switching automatic climate control on and off

1. Turn to the left to minimum air volume.
2. After approx. 1 second, turn to the left again.

You switch on the system again by pressing any button of the automatic climate control.

Front ventilation



1 Thumbwheels to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

Do not drop any foreign objects into the vent outlets, otherwise these could be catapulted outwards and lead to injuries.◀

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

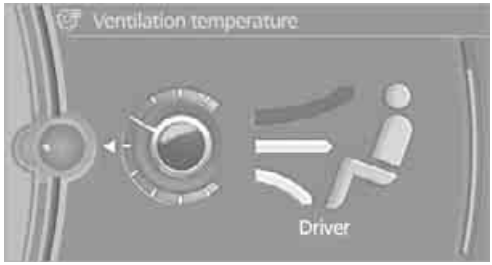
Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

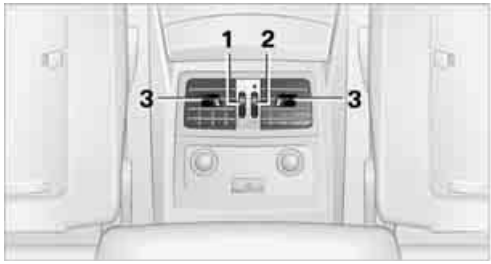
Adjusting temperature in upper body region

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Ventilation temperature"



Ventilation in rear



1 Thumbwheel to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Thumbwheel to adjust the temperature:

- ▷ Turn toward blue: colder
- ▷ Turn toward red: warmer

3 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Parked car ventilation

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked car mode at any outside temperature.

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between use.

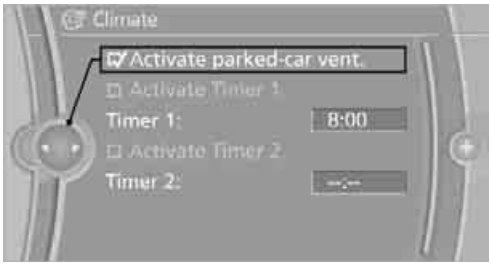
The air emerges through the upper body region vent outlets in the instrument panel. These vent outlets must be open for the system to operate.

The parked car ventilation is operated via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate parked-car vent."

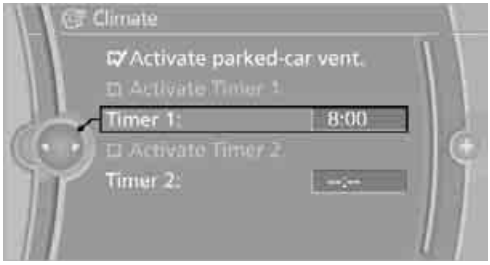


The parked-car ventilation is switched on.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"
4. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"



5. Turn the controller: set the hours.
6. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.
7. Turn the controller: set the minutes.
8. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.

The switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

The symbol on the automatic climate control display flashes when the system has switched on.

The respective system is switched on within the next 24 hours only. Please reactivated it after this time.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as garage and gate or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 111.

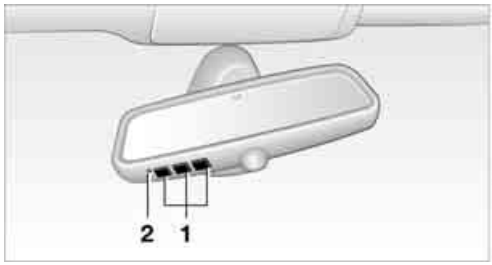
To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter.◀

Checking compatibility

If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have additional questions, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.
HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

Programming



1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page 57.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes quickly. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

You can operate the device when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any additional questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes quickly:
All stored programs are deleted.

Individual programs cannot be deleted.

Rememorizing individual programs

1. Hold the original handheld remote control approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/30 cm away from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the command button of the original hand-held transmitter. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.

Sun blinds*

Sun blind for rear window

Press the button on the driver's door.

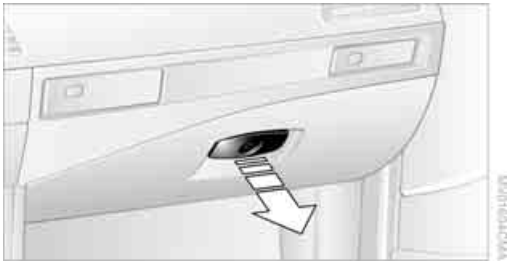
Sun blinds for rear side windows

Pull the loop of the roller sun blind and hook onto bracket.

Do not open the window with the roller sun blind deployed. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage and injury at higher speeds.◀

Glove compartment

Opening



Pull the handle. The light in the glove compartment switches on.

To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Raise the lid into the closed position.

Locking

Lock with a key.

If you only hand over the remote control without the integrated key, e.g., for valet parking, refer to page 26, the glove compartment cannot be unlocked.◀

USB interface for data transmission

Port for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g., music collections.

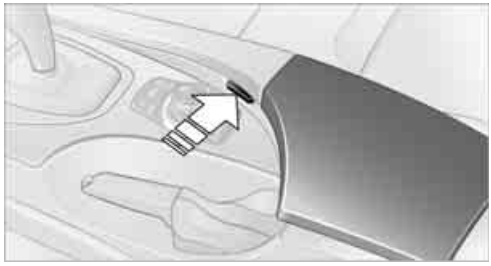
Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard discs.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Front center armrest

The compartment in the center armrest is divided into two sections.

Opening cover

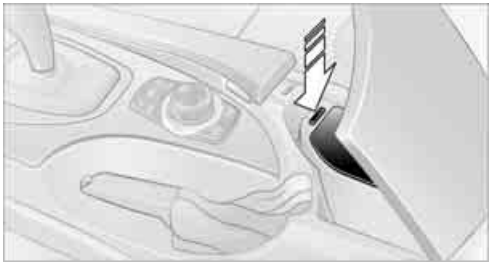


Press the button. The cover opens somewhat and can be folded upwards.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the upper section contains a compartment with a mat that can be removed for cleaning, or a telephone cradle*.

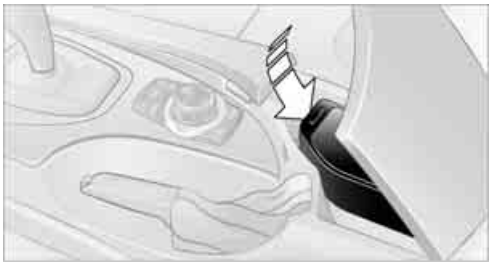
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Opening upper compartment



Press button and fold cover upward.

Accessing lower compartment



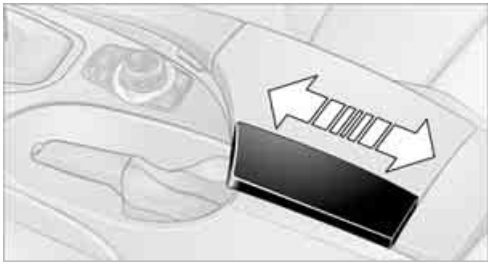
Press the button at the front and fold the upper compartment or the telephone cradle upward.

Ventilating lower compartment*

Push the slide in the lower compartment upward.

▷ Depending on the automatic climate control setting, the temperature inside the ventilated compartment may be higher than in the rest of the interior. Should this be the case, push the slide downward to close off the ventilation.◀

Adjusting



Push the illustrated section of the center armrest into the desired position.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the vehicle's speaker system:

- ▷ AUX-IN port, refer to page 172.
- ▷ USB audio interface*, refer to page 172.

Storage compartments

Storage compartments are located on the doors, in the front center console and in the rear.
Storage nets are located on the backrests of the front seats, and a net* is provided in the front passenger footwell.

⚠ Do not stow hard or sharp-edged objects in the storage nets or the net, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

Clothes hooks

Clothes hooks are located near the grab handles in the rear.

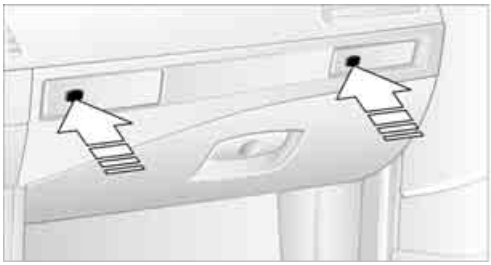
⚠ When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Cupholders

Use lightweight, unbreakable containers and do not transport hot beverages. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cupholders, otherwise damage could result.◀

Opening



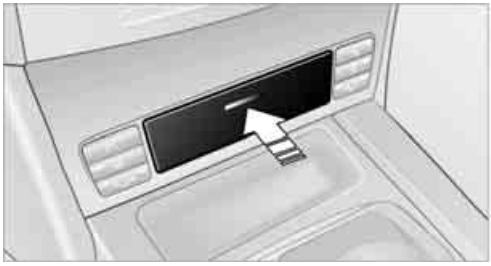
Briefly press the button.

Closing

Press the cover in the center and push in the cup holder.

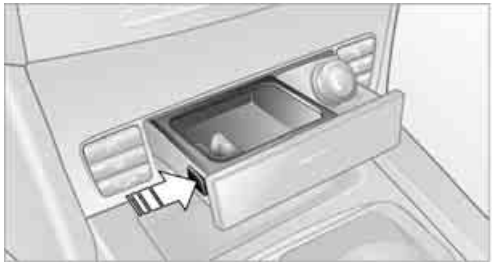
Ashtray, front*

Opening



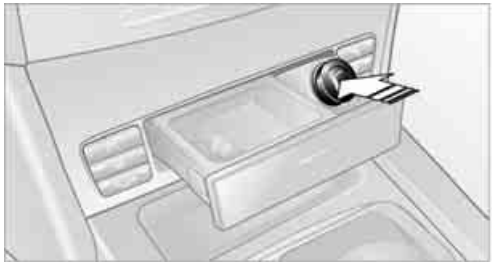
Briefly press the center of the cover.

Emptying



Press the button, refer to arrow. The ashtray rises and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, front*



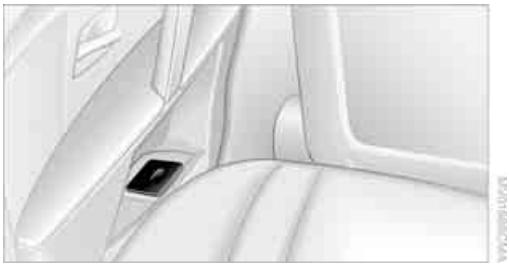
Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Ashtray, rear*



Emptying

Press the entire cover down. The ashtray rises and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, rear*

Refer to Cigarette lighter, front.

Connecting electrical devices

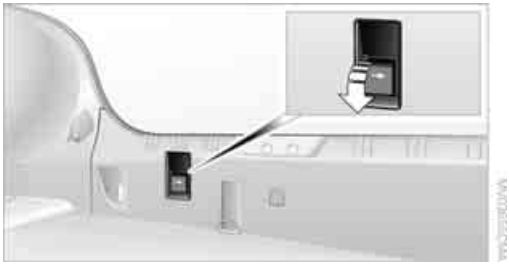
Sockets

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket due to inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes. The same is true for all power outlets in the vehicle.

In front passenger footwell

Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Sedan: In cargo bay



Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Sports Wagon: In cargo bay

Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

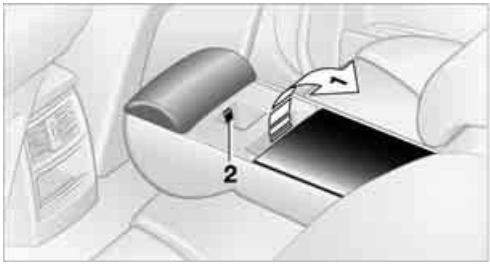
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In rear center console

Depending on the equipment, the sockets in the rear are covered with caps or equipped with a lighter. Refer to Cigarette lighter, front, page 114.

Access to socket:
Remove respective cap or lighter.

Center armrest, rear



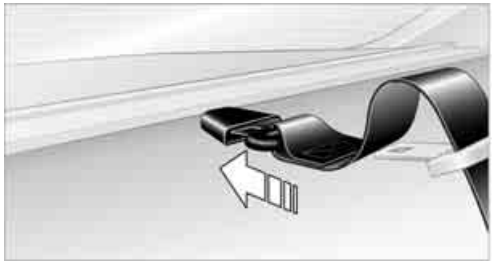
Storage tray:
Pull the cover upward, arrow **1**.

Access to cupholders:
Press button **2** and open the cover.

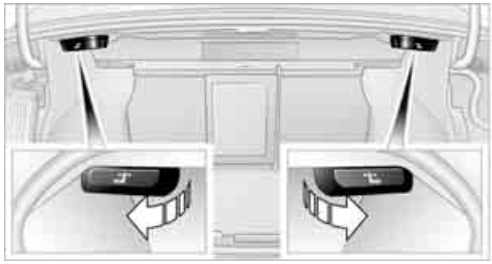
Sedan: Through-loading system*

Opening

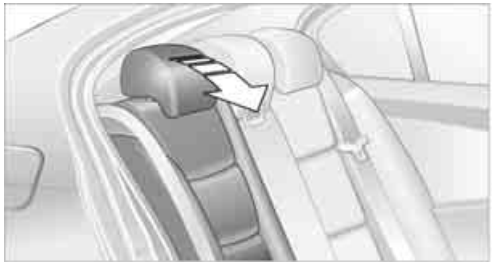
1. Release the buckle of the center seat belt in the rear seat using the latch plate of one of the other safety belts. Insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the socket provided for it on the rear window shelf.



2. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go, refer to page 47.
3. To release the rear backrest, pull the corresponding lever in the cargo bay.



4. The unlocked rear backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forward by the head restraint.



Closing

1. Fold the rear backrest into the seating position and engage.

When you return the seat to its upright position, make sure that the catch engages properly. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the vehicle dur-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

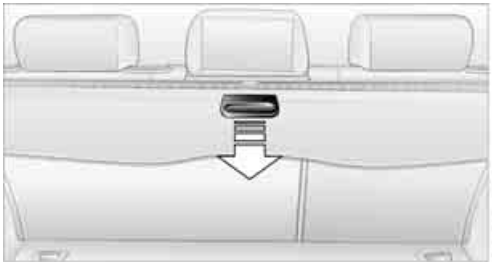
ing braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

2. Release the latch plate from the bracket on the rear window shelf and insert it into the buckle of the center safety belt. Make sure the latch plate audibly engages.

The lashing eyes in the cargo bay provide you with a way to attach cargo-bay nets* or luggage straps for securing suitcases and luggage, refer to page 128.

Sports Wagon: cargo bay

Luggage compartment roller cover



Pull out the luggage compartment roller cover and hook it into the brackets.

Do not place heavy or hard objects on the luggage compartment roller cover. If you do so, they may pose a danger to vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers. Do not allow the luggage compartment roller cover to snap back, otherwise it can be damaged.◀

Manual luggage compartment roller cover

When opening the tailgate or rear window, the luggage compartment roller cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate and rear window, press down the luggage compartment roller cover until it engages.

Automatic luggage compartment roller cover*

When the tailgate or rear window are opened, the luggage compartment roller cover is raised, and when the tailgate and rear window are closed, it is lowered.

Make sure that the closing area of the luggage compartment roller cover is clear of obstructions, otherwise the payload or the luggage compartment roller cover may be damaged.◀

Expanding cargo bay

The rear backrest is divided. You can fold down both sides separately in order to expand the cargo bay.

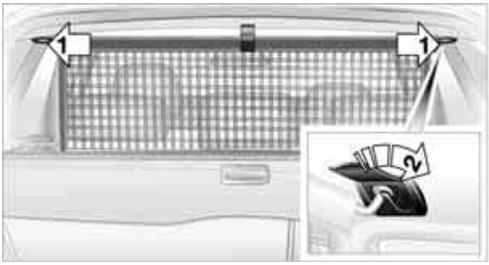
Reach into the recess and pull toward the front.

When you fold back the backrest, be sure that the catch engages securely. The red warning indicator disappears in the recess when the catch is engaged. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the safety belt information on page 43.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Partition net



Do not allow the partition net to snap back, otherwise there is a risk of injury and the partition net may be damaged.◀

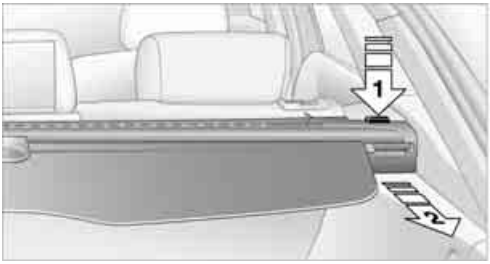
With normal cargo bay

Pull the partition net out of the case by the loop. Grip the bar on both ends and insert it into the retaining fixtures, arrow **1**. This is best carried out from the rear seat.

When you no longer require the partition net, grip both ends of the bar and take it out of the retaining fixtures, arrow **2**. Then slowly allow the partition net to glide into the case.

With an expanded cargo bay

1. Fold down both rear backrests, refer to Expanding cargo bay.
2. Use the buttons to unlatch the casing on both sides, arrow **1**.



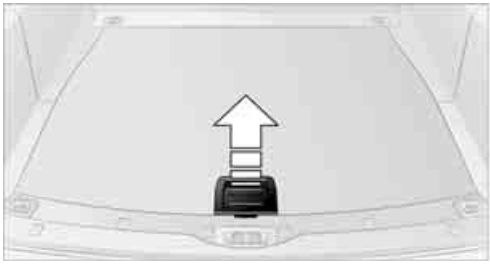
3. Pull the casing out backwards, arrow **2**, without tilting it.

4. Push the case into the guides on the backs of the backrests.
5. Carefully pull out the partition net and insert it in the front brackets as described in With normal cargo bay. This is best carried out from the front seat.

To restore the original state, proceed in the reverse order. Finally, lay the case in the two side brackets and then press forward until it engages. The red warning indicator disappears in the recess when the catch is engaged. Check whether the case is properly locked in place by pulling it with a sudden movement.

Compartment in floor

Automatic luggage compartment roller cover: the opened floor panel strikes against the luggage compartment roller cover in the end position. If necessary, unhook the luggage compartment roller cover at the rear before opening the floor panel.



To open, reach into the recess and swing up the handle.

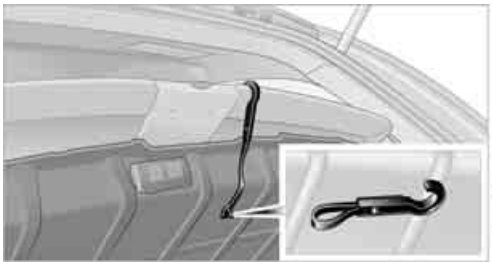
The floor panel flap can be locked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The partitions in the compartment can be rearranged.

Folding up spare tire cover

1. Swing up the cover.



2. Detach the hook from the bracket and hook into the floor panel flap.

Before swinging down, return the hook to its original position.

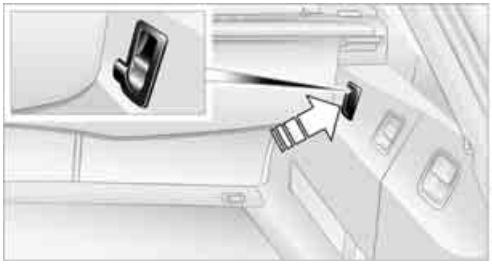
Storage area loading options*

Retaining straps

You can unhook the right-hand retaining strap, e.g., to open the side panel. To unhook at the rear end, pull downward; to hook in, press it into the opening. In addition, it can also be secured in the center. This makes it possible to secure objects of different sizes.

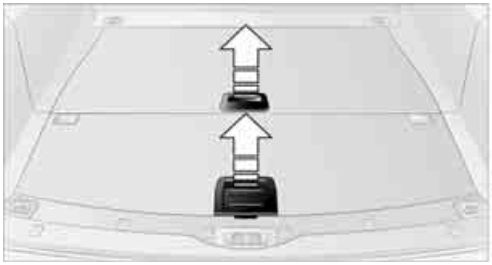
Hooks

Two hooks can be used to secure smaller objects.



Press at bottom and fold out until they lock.

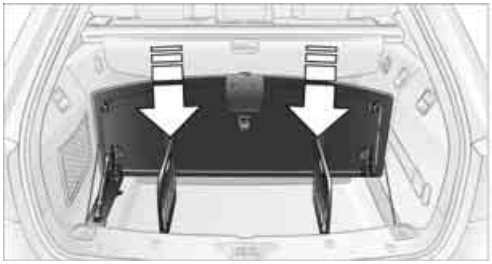
Compartments in floor



Front compartment:
To open the flap, pull upward on the handle.
To close the flap, press downward until it locks.

Rear compartment:
To open, reach into the recess and swing up the handle.
The rear flap can be locked.

Dividing up rear compartment



Fold out the partitions and press down.

⚠ Use the partition net, refer to page 118. Otherwise objects could be thrown around and endanger occupants, e.g., during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Ski bag*

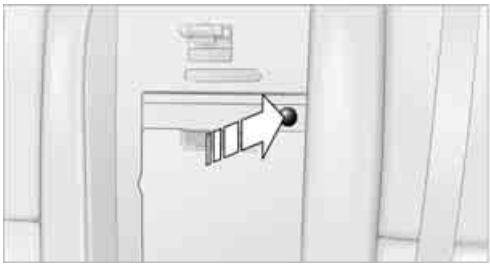
The ski bag is designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length of up to 6.9 ft/2.10 m. When skis of 6.9 ft/2.10 m in length are loaded, the ski bag will tend to contract, reducing its overall capacity.

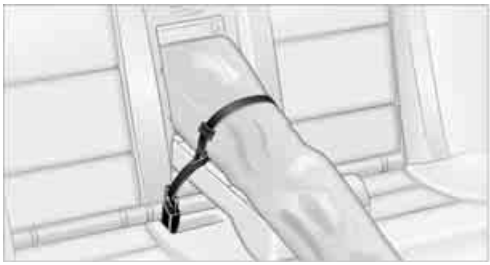
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Loading

1. Fold down the center armrest, press the button and open the cover.



2. Press the button again; the cover in the cargo bay opens. If you press the button firmly the first time, this also opens the cover in the cargo bay.
3. Extend the ski bag between the front seats and fill it. The zipper facilitates access to the stowed items and drying of the ski bag.
4. Insert the latch plate of the ski bag retaining strap into the center safety belt buckle that is marked CENTER.



Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

To store the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Removing ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g., for faster drying or to allow you to put it to other uses.

1. Pull the handle forward and pull the ski bag up and out.
2. Close the cover in the cargo bay.

Your BMW center will be glad to provide you with more detailed information on the various items of equipment.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Driving tips

This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and driving speeds, however do not exceed 4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick down mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch is only at its optimized level after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

Saving fuel

The fuel consumption of your vehicle depends on various factors. Through a few simple steps, your driving style, and regular maintenance, you can have a positive influence on your fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Removing unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Removing add-on parts after use

Remove unneeded auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks after use. Add-on parts attached to the vehicle impede the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Closing windows and glass sunroof

An open glass sunroof or open windows likewise increase the drag coefficient and therefore the fuel consumption.

Checking tire inflation pressures regularly

Check and correct the tire inflation pressure as needed at least twice a month and before long trips.

An insufficient tire inflation pressure increases the rolling resistance and thus increases the fuel consumption and tire wear.

Driving off immediately

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive at a moderate engine speed. This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Thinking ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. To do so, maintain the appropriate distance from the vehicle in front of you. An anticipatory and smooth driving style reduces fuel consumption.

Avoiding high engine speeds

Use 1st gear only for starting off. Accelerate rapidly in 2nd gear and above. Avoid high engine speeds in doing so and shift into the next gear early.

When you have reached the desired speed, shift into the highest possible gear and drive with the lowest possible engine speed while maintaining a constant vehicle speed.

In general: driving at a low engine speed reduces fuel consumption and minimizes wear.

Taking advantage of coasting

When approaching a red light, let off the gas and allow the vehicle to coast to a stop in the highest possible gear.

On steep roadways, let off the gas and allow the vehicle to roll in the appropriate gear.

The flow of fuel is interrupted when coasting.

Switching off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine at longer stops such as traffic signals, railroad crossings, or in traffic jams. Even having the engine switched off for approx. 4 seconds results in fuel savings.

Switching off functions currently not required

Functions such as the cooling function of the automatic climate control, seat heating or rear window defroster draw large amounts of power and consume additional fuel. Their influence is particularly pronounced in city traffic and stop & go operation. For this reason, it is a good idea to switch these functions off when they are not really needed.

Having maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in order to achieve the optimum economy and service life of your vehicle. BMW recommends having the maintenance performed by a BMW center. Also please pay attention to the BMW maintenance system, refer to page 215.

General driving notes

Closing luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

Operate the vehicle only when the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is completely closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the interior of the vehicle.◀

If it is absolutely necessary to drive with the luggage compartment lid open:

1. Close all windows and the glass sunroof or panorama glass sunroof.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 107.

Hot exhaust system

As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, refer also to Minimum tire tread on page 208.

Driving through water

Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Using parking brake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle in place for a long time by riding the clutch; use the parking brake. Otherwise greater clutch wear will result.◀

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

The braking effect of the engine can be further increased by downshifting, if necessary all the way down into first gear. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. For information on downshifting in the manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 61.

Do not drive with the clutch depressed, in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the air conditioner system during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Cargo loading

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to over-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

heating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blow out.◀

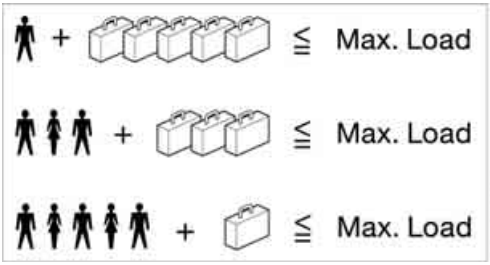
Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo bay; otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.◀

Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

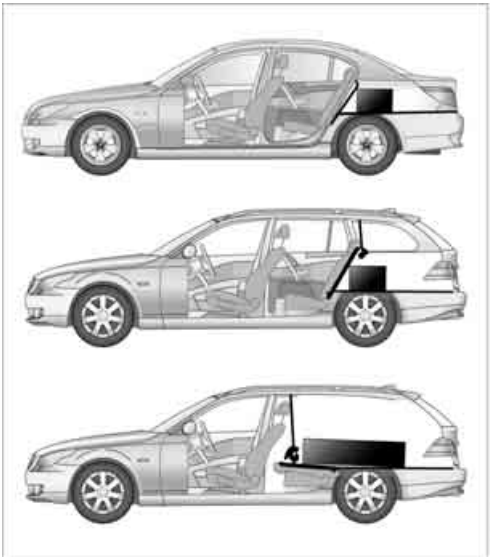
   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs. or YYY kg, as otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and unstable driving conditions may result.◀
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs. or YYY kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.:
   1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

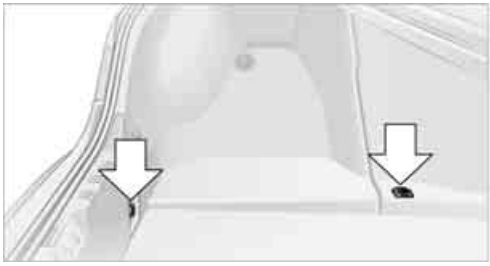


- ▷ Load heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the rear backrest.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.
- ▷ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- Do not pile objects higher than the top edge of the backrest.
- Sports Wagon:
  Use the partition net to protect the occupants, refer to page 118. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate through the partition net.
  Wrap sharp-edged or pointed objects which could strike the rear window while driving.

Securing cargo



- Use the luggage net*, luggage straps, or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.
- Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the cargo bay are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration.
- Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

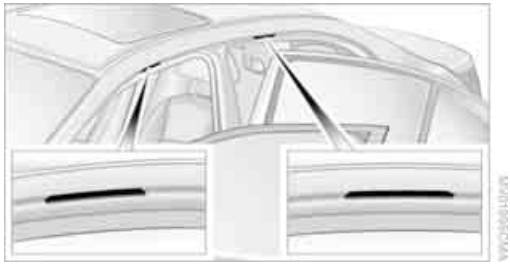
Position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the vehicle's occupants, for example if sudden braking or evasive maneuvers are necessary.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 241, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
You should never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers.

Use only the lashing eyes pictured to fasten the heavy-duty cargo straps. Do not secure cargo with the upper attachment points for LATCH, refer to page 55; otherwise, you could damage them.◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack*

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Please comply with the precautions included with the installation instructions.

Mounting points



The mounting points are located in the door openings or on the roof rails*.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on its handling and steering response.
You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the specified weights under Weights on page 241.

Distribute the roof load uniformly. The load must not be too large in area. Always stow the heaviest pieces on the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising the glass sunroof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Secure roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Navigation

This chapter describes how to enter destinations and specify your route so that the navigation system can guide you reliably to your destination.

Navigation system*

General information

With the help of satellites, the navigation system is able to ascertain the precise position of the vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◀

Navigation data

General information

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Navigation data and authorization codes are available from your BMW center.

Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.

- ▷ The data are updated while you are driving.
- ▷ The update is resumed automatically when a trip is continued after an interruption.
- ▷ All functions are available during the trip.
- ▷ The data are stored in the vehicle.
- ▷ After the update, the system restarts.
- ▷ The medium that holds the navigation data can be removed after the update is completed.

Updating the navigation data

Inserting the navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

Removing the navigation DVD

1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

Displaying information on the version

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version":
   Information is displayed on the data version.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 135
- ▷ Last destinations, refer to page 136
- ▷ Special destinations, refer to page 136
- ▷ Entering a destination on the map, refer to page 138
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 136
- ▷ Entering a destination by voice commands*, refer to page 139
- ▷ Destination entry via BMW Assist*, refer to page 137

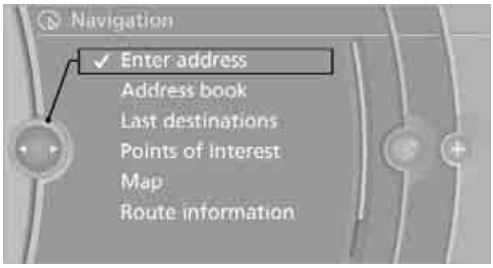
You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Entering a destination manually

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 141. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. "Navigation"
3. "Enter address"



The system also supports you with the following features:

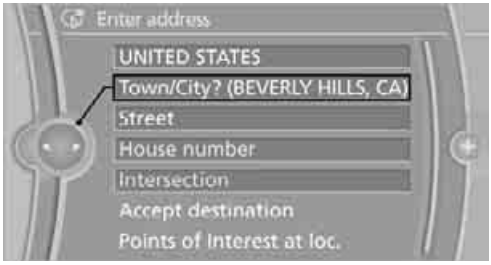
- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town/city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of country and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Entering a state/province

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.



2. Select letters, if necessary.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To delete letters:

▷ To delete individual letters:
Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller.

▷ To delete all letters:
Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller for an extended period.

To enter spaces:

▷ Select the ␣ symbol.

The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the name of the town/city from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. Select the 1@+ symbol.
3. Select the digits.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the postal code: a preview map is displayed.
6. Select the postal code.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection as you would the town/city.

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

If there are several streets with the same name:

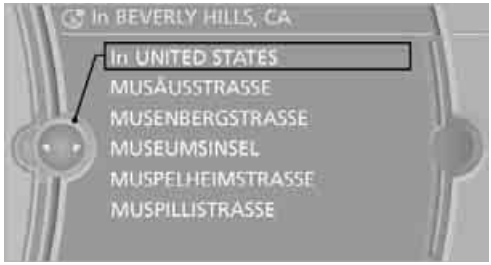
1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the street.

Entering a street without a destination town/city

You can also enter a street without specifying a town/city. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" with the country currently displayed.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street: a preview map is displayed.
9. Select the street.

Entering house number

You can enter any house number stored in the navigation data for the street.

1. "House number"
2. Select the digits.
3. Change to the list of house numbers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

▷ Set your "Route preference", refer to page 142.

▷ Search for "Points of Interest at loc.", refer to page 136.

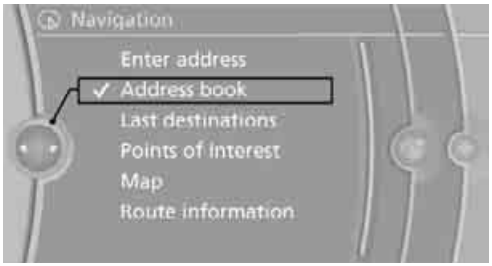
Address book

To create contacts, refer to page 190.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
   Contacts are displayed with addresses if these have been checked as destinations.

   If the contacts with addresses from the mobile phone are not displayed, they first need to be checked as destinations, refer to page 191.

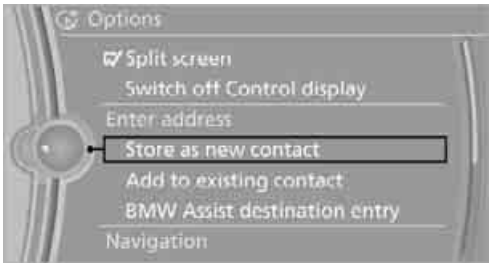


3. Select a contact from the list or, if necessary, using "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, select "Business address" or "Home address".

Storing a destination in the address book

Store the destination in the address book after entering the destination.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".



3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. Select "Business address" or "Home address".
5. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

Your current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact".

4. Depending on the selection, select an existing contact from the list or the type of address and enter the last and first name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

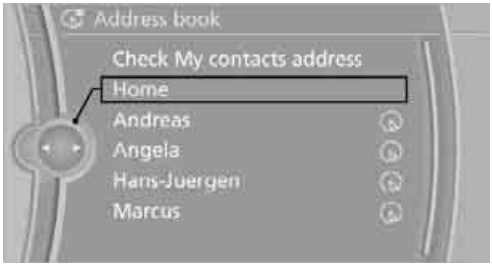
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry".

Using home address as destination

The home address must be stored as a destination. Refer to Specifying a contact as the home address, page 190.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"



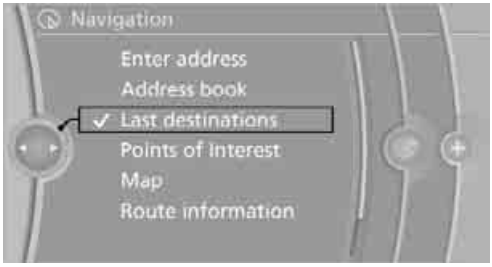
4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

The last destinations are stored automatically. These destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Opening the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"



3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing a destination

Destinations can be edited, for example, to change the house number of an existing entry.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations".

Special destinations

You can search for a special destination, e.g., a hotel or place of interest, and start destination guidance to this location.

The search can be narrowed by entering the location and type of special destination.

▷ The scope of information provided depends on the particular set of navigation data you are using.◀

Opening the search for special destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"

Special destination location

Search for a special destination according to its location relative to a locality or route.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. "Search area"

2. Select the location where the system is to search for the special destination:
   - ▷ "At current location"
   - ▷ "At destination"
   - ▷ "At a different destination"
   - ▷ "Along route"

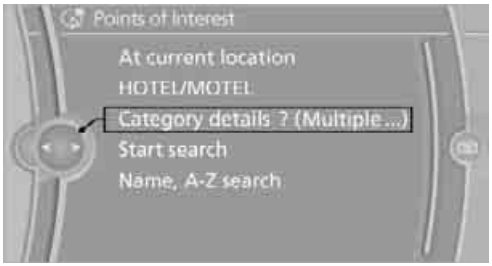
Special destination category

1. "Category"
2. Select "All" or a specific category, e.g., hotels or restaurants.

Category details

For some special destinations, additional details can be displayed that are available in the navigation data, e.g., Italian-style restaurant.

"Category details"



Starting the search for special destinations

1. "Start search"
2. A list of the special destinations is displayed.
   - ▷ "At current location"
     Special destinations are listed according to their distance from the current location and are displayed with a directional arrow pointing to the destination.
   - ▷ "At destination", "At a different destination", "Along route"
     Special destinations are listed according to their distance from the location where the search is being performed.
   - ▷ Destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The view depends on the map scale and the category.
3. Highlight a special destination: The destination is displayed in the preview map.
4. Select the special destination.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.

Destination entry via BMW Assist*

A connection is established to the BMW Concierge service, refer to page 193.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Entering special destinations by name

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. "Name, A-Z search"
4. Enter the letters.
   Depending on the distance, the search may take some time. The list can contain a maximum of 100 entries.
5. Change to the list of special destinations.
6. Highlight a special destination: The destination is displayed in the preview map.
7. Select the special destination.
8. Select the symbol.
9. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"

5. Select the settings.

Entering the destination via the map

If you only know the location of the town or street, you can enter the destination using the map.

Opening the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

A map section is displayed on the Control Display. The map shows the current position of the vehicle.

Selecting the destination

1. Select the ⊕ symbol. The interactive map is started.

2. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
   - ▷ To change the scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
   - ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.
3. Press the controller to display additional menu items.
   - ▷ Select the symbol: "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".
   - ▷ "Return": return to the map view.
   - ▷ "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Specifying the street

If the system cannot recognize a street, it displays a street name in the vicinity or the coordinates of the destination.

Interactive map

In the interactive map, the scale can be adjusted and the visible map section can be shifted. In

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

addition, pressing the controller makes further functions available:

- ▷ Select a symbol and "Start guidance", if necessary.
- ▷ "Exit interactive map"
- ▷ Map view
- ▷ "Display destination"
  The map section around the destination is displayed.
- ▷ "Display current location"
  The map section around your current location is displayed.
- ▷ "Find points of interest", refer to page 136.

Entering a destination by voice commands*

General information

You can enter a desired destination via the voice activation system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between voice command and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the voice command function for this purpose if necessary.

▷ You can have the possible commands read aloud via ›Voice commands‹.◀

Saying the entries

- ▷ Countries, towns and cities, streets and intersections can be said as whole words or spelled in the system language, refer to page 82.

  Example: to enter a destination in a US state as a complete word, the system language must be English.
- ▷ The town/city, street and house number can be said as a single sentence.*
- ▷ Spell the entry if the language region and the system language differ.
- ▷ Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.

Entering an address*

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for a request from the system.
4. Say the town or city, street and house number in a single sentence.
5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.
6. If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g., the town/city.

Entering a town/city

The town/city can be spelled or entered as a complete word*.

▷ The methods of entry depend on the navigation data in use and the country and language settings.◀

1. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.
2. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
3. Say the name of the town/city, or name at least the first three letters.

   Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.
4. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›New entry‹
   - ▷ Select an entry, e.g., ›Entry 2‹
   - ▷ Spell an entry: ›Spell city‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Identical-sounding towns/cities that cannot be distinguished by the system are compiled in a separate list and shown as a town/city followed by three dots.
If necessary, select this entry with ›Yes‹. Then select the desired town/city from this list.◀

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive: Turn the controller until the town/city is selected and press the controller.

Entering a street or intersection

The street or intersection is entered in the same manner as the town/city.

Entering house number

You can enter house numbers up to 999:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.
3. ›Yes‹ to confirm the house number.
4. ›Accept destination‹

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Adding further intermediate destinations

›Add as another destination‹

Further intermediate destinations can be added.

Saving destination

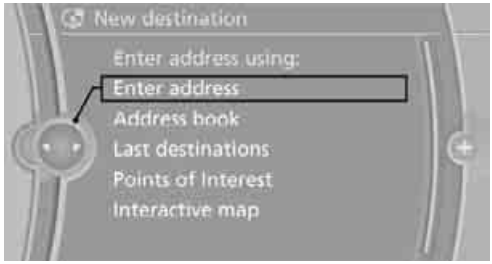
The destination is automatically added to the list of last destinations.

Planning a trip

New trip

Various intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip.

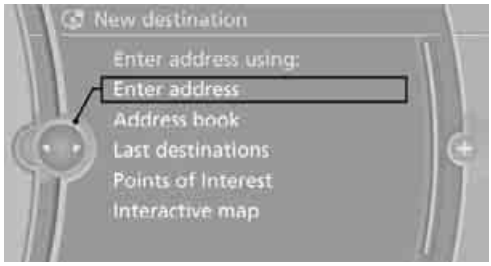
1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left, if necessary.
4. Select the symbol.
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



Entering further intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



3. Select "Add as another dest.".
4. Select the location where the intermediate destination is to be inserted.

Starting the trip

After all intermediate destinations have been entered:
"Start guidance"

Storing a trip

Up to 30 created trips can be stored in the trip list.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Enter the letters.
4. "OK"

The trip is stored in the trip list under the entered name.

Starting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Changing trips

Changing the trip direction

Intermediate destinations can be displayed in reverse order after destination guidance is started.

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Rearranging the intermediate destinations

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip dest."
4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Reposition dest. in the trip"

Deleting an intermediate destination

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip dest."
4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Delete dest. in the trip"

Deleting a trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip".

Word-matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored in the vehicle as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

- ▷ Names of specific locations can also vary from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of the German spelling "München" you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- ▷ When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- ▷ The system offers only those letters for selection of name entries that are stored in the vehicle. The system will not accept non existent names and addresses.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Accept destination"
5. "Start guidance"

The route is displayed on the Control Display after it is calculated.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

General information

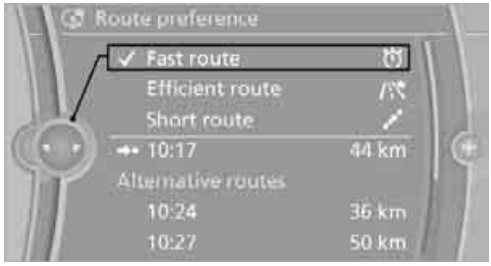
You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like while entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g., whether it is a highway or a winding road. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Selecting a criterion:
   - ▷ "Fast route": time-optimized route, which is a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Efficient route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest roads
   - ▷ "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
   - ▷ "Alternative routes": other suggested alternative routes while destination guidance is active



5. Select additional route criteria, if desired. Where possible, the selected criteria will be avoided on the route.
   - ▷ Avoid highways where possible: "Avoid highways"
   - ▷ Avoid toll roads where possible: "Avoid toll roads"
   - ▷ Avoid ferries where possible: "Avoid ferries"

The setting applies to the current route and to the planning of future routes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dynamic destination guidance

"Dynamic guidance" is switched on:
The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions. The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.

Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

▷ If the "Avoid highways", "Avoid toll roads" or "Avoid ferries" route criteria are selected, route calculation may take considerably longer.◀

Route

General information

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, different views of the route are available during destination guidance:

- ▷ List of streets and towns/cities
- ▷ Map view, refer to page 144
- ▷ Arrow view in the Head-up Display*

Displaying a list of the streets or towns/cities on the route

When destination guidance is started, a list of the streets and towns/cities on the route is displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight a section.

The section is displayed in the preview map.

Bypassing a section of the route

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"

4. Turn the controller: enter the desired number of miles.
5. Press the controller.

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendations

The remaining range is calculated and gas stations along the route are recommended.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"
   A list of gas stations is displayed.
4. Select a gas station.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

Destination guidance via voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

Voice instructions can be switched on or off during destination guidance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.

Symbol	Meaning
	Voice instructions are switched on
	Voice instructions are switched off

For rapid access, the feature can be stored on a programmable memory key, refer to page 20.

Repeating a voice instruction

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the symbol.
4. Press the controller twice.

Adjusting the volume of voice instructions*

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the knob during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Map display

Displaying map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The following functions are directly available in the map view:

Symbol	Function
	Starting/stopping destination guidance
	Switching voice instructions on/off
	Changing route criteria or selecting route alternatives
	Special destinations
	Displaying traffic bulletins
	Interactive map
N	Map view settings
	Changing scale

Information in the map view:

- Time, entertainment source, sound output, map orientation
- Distance from destination, estimated time of arrival, if destination guidance is active.
- Any traffic obstructions are highlighted in color.

To show/hide information on the map:
Press the controller.

Viewing the map

1. Select the N symbol.
2. Select a setting:
   - "View facing north"
   - "View in dir. of travel"
   - "Perspective view"
   - "Arrow display"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Press the controller.

Changing the map section

Select the interactive map.

- ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
- ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing scale

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Automatic scaling of the map

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until AUTO is displayed as the map scale.
The map shows the entire range from your location to the destination.

Settings for the map view

The map is shown on the Control Display.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Settings"
3. Set the optimized map view.
   - ▷ "Day/night mode"
     Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions. When the traffic bulletin map is activated, this setting is disregarded.
   - ▷ "Satellite images"
     Satellite images* are displayed depending on availability and resolution.
   - ▷ "Perspective view in 3D"
     Displays a spatial view. Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.
   - ▷ "Traffic Info map"
     The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Map view for the split screen display

The map view for the split screen can be selected separately from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
   The split screen is switched on.
3. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
4. Select the map view:
   - ▷ "Arrow display"
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Map view with perspective"
   - ▷ "Exit ramp view"

Changing scale

1. Move the controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. turn the controller.

Traffic information*

You can display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TMC (Traffic Message Channel) of a traffic information service. This information from the traffic information service is continuously updated on the basis of measurement data from traffic control centers and information on traffic congestion.
During destination guidance, traffic bulletins that are relevant to areas along the route are automatically displayed and taken into account in the route planning. You can open all traffic bulletins manually via iDrive.

The traffic bulletins are shown in the map view.

Real Time Traffic Information End-User Provisions

Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to license "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. nor BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

Activating/deactivating reception

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. Activate/deactivate "Receive Traffic Info".

In many metropolitan areas you can receive traffic information broadcast by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic management centers and the traffic information is periodically updated.
During destination guidance, the traffic information relevant to your planned route is automatically displayed. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic bulletins displayed in the map view or in the traffic info list.

Traffic bulletins in a list

A list of the traffic bulletins can be opened via the menu or map view.

Opening the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left, if necessary.
4. Select the symbol: "Traffic Info"
   First, the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.
5. Select a traffic bulletin.

Additional information can be displayed for some traffic bulletins:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Additional information is displayed.
3. Exit from the menu:
   Move the controller to the left.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Traffic bulletins on the map

When the traffic bulletin map is activated, the Control Display changes to a black and white display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. The day/night mode is disregarded in this setting. The symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic Info map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction and impact are displayed on the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

Filtering of traffic bulletins

You can filter which traffic bulletins are to be displayed by the system:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired categories.

Traffic bulletins of the selected categories are displayed.

- ▷ Traffic bulletins on incidents along the route are always displayed.
- ▷ For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Traffic bulletins during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic guidance" is selected, refer to page 143.

During destination guidance, traffic obstructions on the route are taken into consideration.

Information on sources of great danger, such as wrong-way drivers, is displayed regardless of the setting.

Displaying traffic obstructions

When the navigation system receives a traffic obstruction message and "Dynamic guidance" is not selected, you will be shown certain information, such as the length of the traffic congestion, when you are approx. 30 miles/50 km away from the traffic obstruction.
The last possible detour exit is indicated just before you reach it.

This information is displayed even if you have called up another application on the Control Display.

Selecting a detour

Select the symbol: "Detour".

"Dynamic guidance" is activated for the current destination guidance.

Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic guidance" is selected, the route will be changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system will not point out traffic obstructions on the original route. Depending on the road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the newly calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

What to do if...

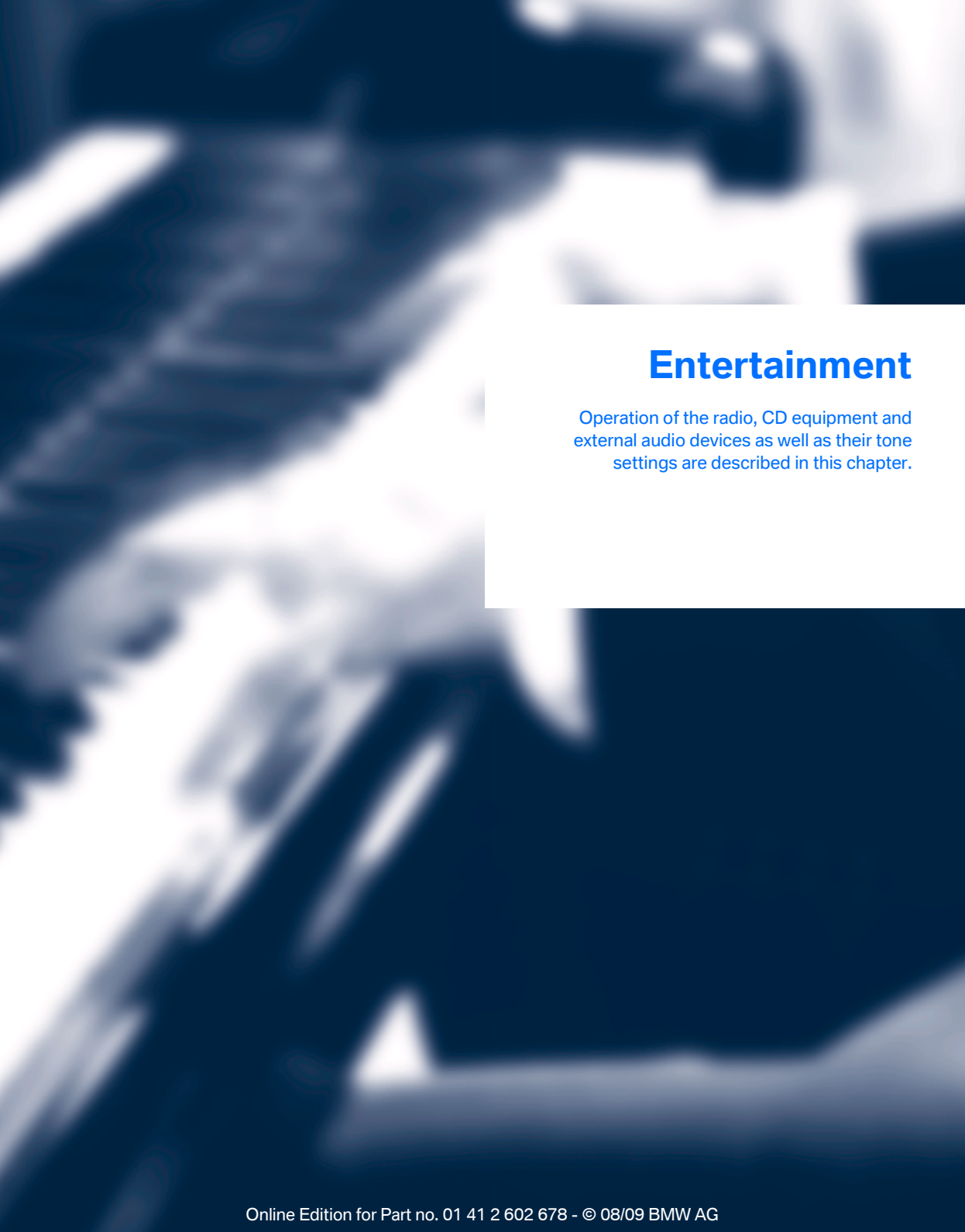
What to do if...

- The current position cannot be displayed?
  The position is in an unrecognized region, in a poor reception area, or the system is in the process of determining the position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- The destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  A downtown area cannot be determined for the town or city that has been entered. Input any street in the selected town/city and start destination guidance.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- The letters for a destination cannot be selected during destination entry?
  The stored data do not contain the data of the destination. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- The map view is displayed in black and white?
  When the traffic bulletin map is activated, the Control Display changes to a black and white display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.
- Voice instructions are no longer issued before intersections during destination guidance?
  The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 B



Entertainment

Operation of the radio, CD equipment and external audio devices as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

On/off and tone

The following audio and video sources share the same control elements and adjustments:

- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD/DVD player
- ▷ CD changer*
- ▷ Video*
- ▷ External devices, e.g., MP3 player

Controls

The audio and video sources can be controlled using the:

- ▷ Buttons in the area of the CD/DVD player
- ▷ iDrive
- ▷ Buttons on the steering wheel; refer to page 11
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20
- ▷ Voice activation system

Buttons in the area of the CD/DVD player

1 Sound output for entertainment on/off, volume

- ▷ Press: switch on/off
  When the system is switched on, the most recently selected radio station or track is played.
- ▷ Turn: adjusting volume

2 Station scan/track search

- ▷ Change the radio station
- ▷ Select the track for the CD/DVD player, CD changer and certain multimedia devices

3 Eject the CD/DVD

4 CD/DVD drive*

5 **MODE**: change the audio and video sources

6 **FM/AM:** change the radio station wave-band

Switching on/off

To switch the entertainment sound output on and off:
Press knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

Sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes after the ignition is switched off. Switch on the sound output again for this purpose.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g., treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

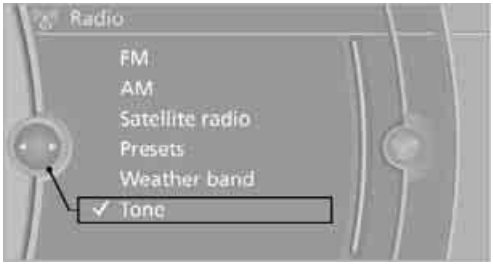
Treble, bass, balance, fader

▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

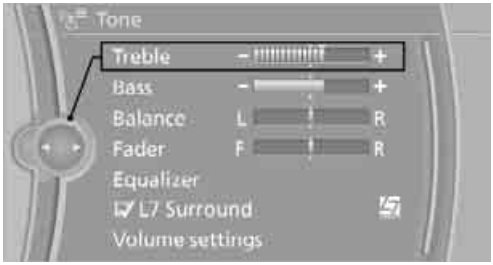
▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone setting.

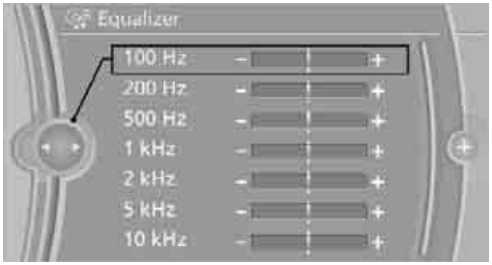


4. To adjust: turn the controller.
5. To store: press the controller.

Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"
4. Select the desired setting.

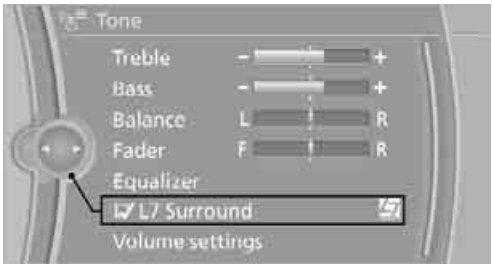


5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, Surround*

You can select between stereo and multi-channel playback, Surround.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "L7 Surround"



Multi-channel playback, Surround, is simulated when playing back an audio track in stereo.

Surround is automatically activated or deactivated, depending on the audio track selected.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

Volume

▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control

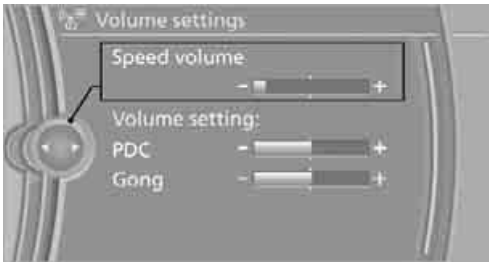
▷ "PDC"*: volume of the PDC signal tone relative to the entertainment sound output

▷ "Gong": volume of the signal tone, e.g., for the "Fasten safety belt" reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Radio

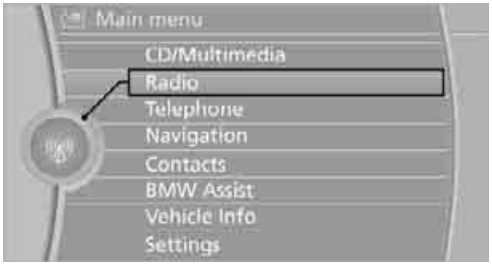
Your radio is designed for reception of the following stations:

- ▷ FM and AM
- ▷ HD Radio*
- ▷ Weather Band*
- ▷ Satellite radio*

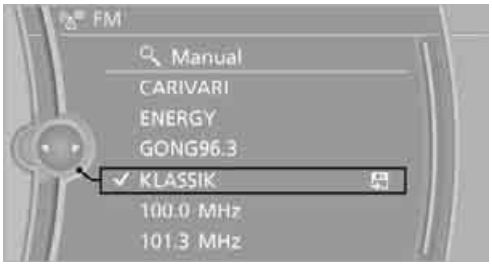
Selecting a station

Press the knob if the sound output is switched off.

1. "Radio"



2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.



The selected station is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing stations

Turn and press the controller

or

Press the button for the corresponding direction

or

Press the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection using the frequency.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. Select the frequency: turn the controller.

To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Storing stations

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.

4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

About programmable memory buttons

You can also store a station on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

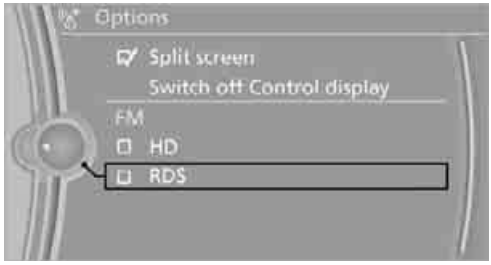
1. Select a station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button for a longer period.

Radio Data System RDS*

In the FM waveband, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio*

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals. If a digital radio network is available, these stations can be received digitally and thus with better sound quality.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, the playback switches between analog and digital reception. Due to time delayed broadcasting, there may be repetitions or interruptions. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

Presets

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"

4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Weather Band*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every 4 to 6 minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of 1 to 3 hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Calling up weather news flashes

To operate via the iDrive:

1. Switch on the radio.
2. "Weather band"
3. Select the desired channel.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception.◀

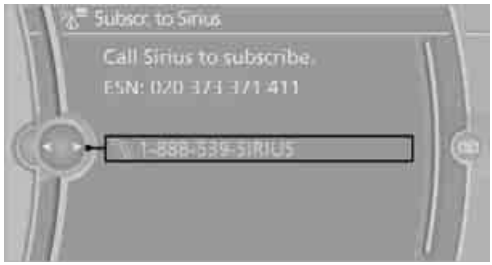
Enabling or disabling channels

Enabling channels

1. Ensure that reception is reliable. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
2. "Radio"
3. "Satellite radio"
4. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.

5. Select the channel.

If the channel has not yet been enabled, then a phone number and the ESN electronic serial number are displayed.



6. Call the phone number to have the channel enabled.

The channels can be disabled again via this phone number.

Disabling channels

The channels can be disabled by phone. To do so, have the electronic serial number ESN ready.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio".
3. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.

4. Open "Options".
5. The electronic serial number is displayed.
6. Call Sirius to have the channel disabled.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting a channel

Selecting a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All Channels" or the desired category.

4. Select desired channel.

Storing a channel

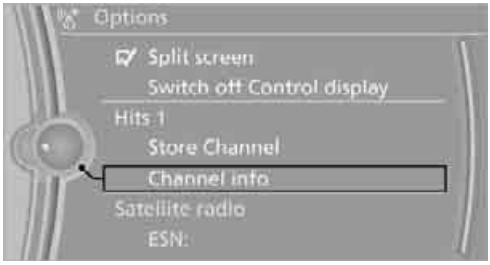
1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Store Channel"
6. Call up the desired memory location.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

Displaying information about another channel

Information can be displayed about a channel that is not being played.

1. Highlight the channel about which you wish to display information.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Channel info"



Changing the channel using the button next to the CD/DVD drive

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than 4 seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g., environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.
Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CD/DVD player and CD changer*

CD/DVD playback

Inserting a CD/DVD

Insert the CD/DVD into the drive with the printed side up. The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files, it can take several minutes to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

Playable formats

CD/DVD player

- ▷ DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video
- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD, SVCD
- ▷ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC

CD changer*

- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA

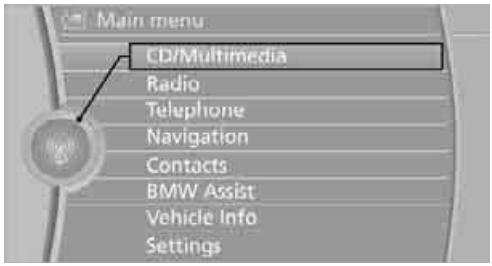
Start playback

Via iDrive

Fill the CD/DVD magazine and insert it, refer to page 164.

To start playback if a CD is already located in the player or changer:

1. "CD/Multimedia"



2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD:

Ejecting the CD/DVD

Press the ⏏ button next to the CD/DVD player. The CD/DVD emerges slightly from the drive.

Symbol	Function
	CD/DVD player
1...6	CD changer

Audio playback

Selecting a track using the button

Press the ◁ ▷ button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting a track using iDrive

Audio CDs

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the desired track to begin playback.

CD/DVD with compressed audio files*

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the directory, if necessary.
   To change to a higher level directory: move the controller to the left.

5. Select the track and press the controller.

Displaying information about the track*

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- ▷ Artist
- ▷ Album title
- ▷ Number of tracks on the CD/DVD
- ▷ Track file name

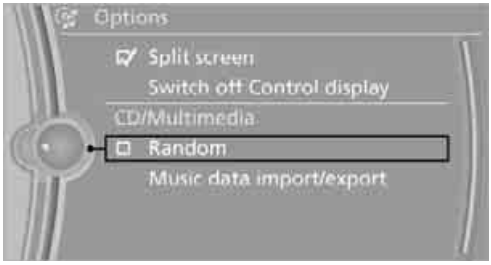
Random play sequence

The tracks on the current CD/DVD are played once in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Open "Options".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

5. "Random"



CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: the directories and the tracks contained therein are played back in random sequence.

Random mode is switched off if the audio source is changed or the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Automatic repeat*

Selected tracks, directories or CDs/DVDs are repeated automatically.

Video playback*

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on your DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Start playback

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, and in some national-market versions only with the parking brake applied.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. "DVD menu"

5. Start the DVD via the DVD menu.

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD/DVD with video content.
4. "Select track"

5. Select the desired track.

The CD/DVD is started.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Video menu

To open the Video menu:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

The Video menu is displayed:

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu*
▷	Start playback
❚❚	Pause
□	Stop
▷❚	Next chapter/next track
❚◁	Previous chapter/previous track
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.
2. DVD "DVD menu"
   The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.

▷ To select menu items: move and press the controller.

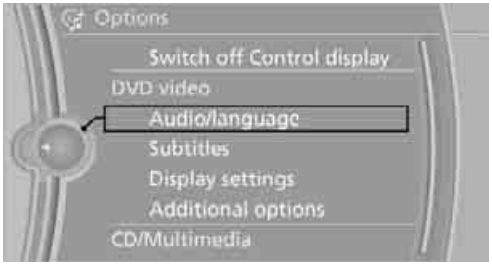
▷ To change to the Video menu: turn the controller and select "Back".

DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on your DVD.

Language*

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"



4. Select the desired language.

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

Subtitles*

Subtitles can be selected if they are contained on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".

Brightness, contrast, color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

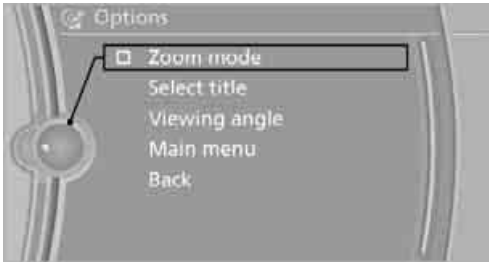
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed, and then press the controller.

Zoom

Display the video image on the full screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"



Selecting track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. ? "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Camera angle*

The camera angle depends on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

CD changer*

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Removing CD magazine

To insert CDs into the CD magazine **1** or remove them from it, you must first remove the magazine from the CD changer:

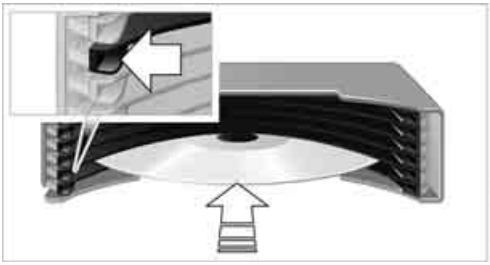
Press button **2**: the CD magazine **1** slides out.

Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing in the magazine again so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs into/from the CD magazine

When inserting or removing CDs, remember to hold them by their edges, taking care to avoid touching the data side with its reflective CD memory surface.

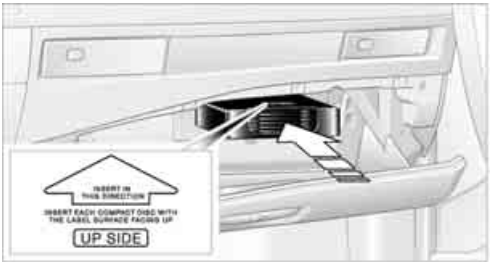
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG



Inserting CDs:
Insert one CD into each compartment of the magazine with the labeled side up.

Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired tray and remove the CD.

Inserting CD magazine



Push in the CD magazine as far as possible in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.

Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g., Single-CDs, otherwise the CDs or the adapter may jam and no longer eject.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD may jam and no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this may be due to one of the following reasons.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damage

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Storing music

Music tracks from CDs, DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection in the vehicle and played from there.

- ▷ Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format when they are stored. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.
- ▷ CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. After storing, the tracks and directories can be deleted individually. Files are only stored in the WMA, MP3, and AAC formats.
  Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored in the vehicle but cannot be played back.

⚠ Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disc.◀

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote® is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. Gracenote Software copyright 2000-2009 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc., for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trade marks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo, the logo typeface and the "powered by Gracenote" logo are trade marks of Gracenote.

Storing from CDs/DVDs

Data can only be stored from CDs/DVDs on the CD/DVD player.

1. Insert the CD/DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"

The music collection is displayed.
The tracks are stored and played back in sequence out of the music collection.

Observe the following during the storage process:
Do not switch back to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can also be called up.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

3. "Storing..."

4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your service center.

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

▷ Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.

▷ Unsuitable devices: USB hard discs, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone.

▷ Data can only be stored from a USB device via the USB interface in the glove compartment.◀

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"

Music, playing

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Select the desired category.

5. To select the desired entry:
   ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.

   or

   ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select additional categories if desired.
   The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.
   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Music search by voice*

For instructions on the voice activation system, refer to page 22.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e.g., ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select additional categories if desired.

To select a track directly:

›Title ...‹

Say the voice command and the name of the desired track in one sentence.

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search or the album selected last.

1. "Current playback"

2. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

List of the 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates. Symbols indicate the format.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

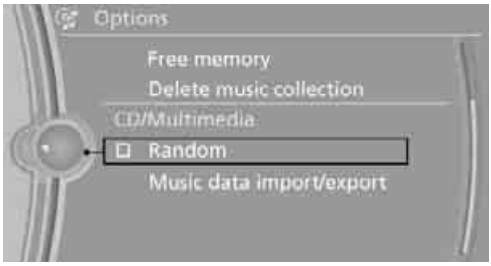
Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.

4. To select tracks, change directories if needed. To go up one level in the directory, move the controller to the left.

Random play sequence

All tracks of the selection are played back in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"



Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is unknown, it can be changed later if needed.

An album cannot be renamed while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"

6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a directory and track

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played back.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from that directory is being played back.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track".

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB device. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours. Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Start the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"

7. "Backup music on USB"

Restoring the music collection in the vehicle

When storing music from the USB device, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

External devices

AUX-IN port

You can connect an external audio device, e.g., an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle speakers. The sound can be adjusted via iDrive.

Connecting

Connection for audio playback:
TRS connector 1/8 in/3.5 mm

To play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system, connect the headset or line-out port of the external device to the AUX-IN port.

Starting audio playback

Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track. Operate the system on the audio device.

Via iDrive

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If applicable, "External devices"
3. "AUX front"

Adjusting volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If applicable, "External devices"
3. "AUX front"
4. "Volume"

5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

USB audio interface*

It is possible to connect external audio devices/mobile phones. They can be operated on the iDrive. The sound is played back on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Connectors for external devices

Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 players, USB flash drives or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.

Due to the large number of different audio devices/mobile phones available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.
Ask about suitable audio devices/mobile phones at your BMW center.

Audio files

The system can play back common audio files, e.g., MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and AAC, as well as playback lists in the M3U format.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Connecting via the USB audio interface

Lift up the center armrest.

Apple iPod/iPhone

To connect the device, use the special cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone, available from your BMW center. The cable adapter is required for a flawless connection.

USB device

To connect the device, use a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB interface and your USB device against physical damage.◀

Connect the USB device to the USB audio interface.

After connecting for the first time, the information of all tracks (e.g., artist, music genre) and the playback lists of the USB device are transferred to the vehicle. This process can take some time. The time required is dependent on the USB device and on the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Information from up to four USB devices can be stored in the vehicle, or a total of about 16,000 tracks.

If a fifth USB device is connected or if more than 16,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Starting audio playback

If the audio device has a device name, this will be displayed if possible.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
   The name of the audio device may appear.

The playback starts with the first track.

Information about the track

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- ▷ Artist
- ▷ Album title
- ▷ Number of tracks
- ▷ Track file name

Track search

You can call up the tracks via the playback lists and information. With USB devices you can also call up the tracks via the file directory.

Selection is possible via:

- ▷ Playback lists
- ▷ Information: type of music, artist, album, track
- ▷ Additionally for USB devices: file directory, composer

Tracks are displayed if they have been saved in the Latin alphabet.

Starting a track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
   The name of the audio device may appear.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Select the desired category, "Genre", "Artist".

All entries are displayed in a list. The "A-Z search" can be used to find specific entries.

▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.

▷ Select the desired entry from the list.

5. Select additional categories if desired.

The tracks found are listed. Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.

6. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

To open playback lists:

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random play sequence

You can play back the tracks of the selected list in random order, e.g., all tracks of an artist.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

Do not subject the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g., extremely high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise, the audio device can be damaged and the resulting distraction can reduce road safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g., bit rates greater than 256 kbit/s, proper playback cannot always be ensured.

Connecting instructions

▷ The connected audio device is supplied with a current of max. 500 mA if this is supported by the device. Therefore, do not connect the device to the power socket in the vehicle.

▷ Do not force the plug into the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.

▷ Do not connect USB hard discs.

▷ Do not use the USB audio interface to recharge external devices.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice commands and how to use BMW Assist or TeleServices.

Telephone*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full preparation package mobile phone. After pairing a suitable mobile phone with the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via the iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel or using voice commands*.

A mobile phone that has been paired once is automatically detected again with the engine running or the ignition switched on as soon as it is in the vehicle interior. The logon data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the respective last mobile phone paired can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when traffic conditions allow you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones snap-in adapters are available for. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual with a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone using:

- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands*, refer to page 185
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20

Avoid operating a mobile phone recognized by the vehicle via the mobile phone's keypad, otherwise malfunctions may result.

Commissioning

Pairing mobile phone in vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Compatible mobile phone: The mobile phone is supported by the full preparation package mobile phone. Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle, refer to page 180, and on the mobile phone.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- Depending on the mobile phone, certain settings may be necessary on the mobile phone, e.g. via the following menu items:
  - Bluetooth activated
  - Connection must be allowed without requiring further confirmation
  - Reconnect
- Depending on the mobile phone model, the setting energy saving mode can, for example, result in vehicle failing to detect the paired mobile phone.
- For pairing, define a 4- to 16-digit number of your choice as the Bluetooth Passkey, e.g. 25081107. A long and complex number offers better protection against unauthorized access. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required following successful pairing.
- The ignition is switched on.

Only pair the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road users can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver.◀

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

Preparation via iDrive

3. "Telephone"
4. "Bluetooth"
5. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

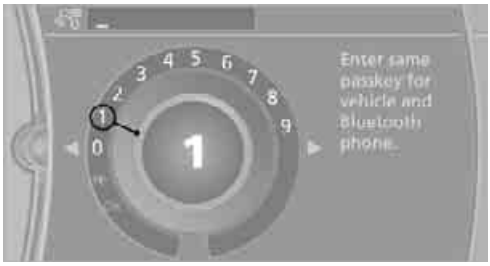
Preparation with mobile phone

6. Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g., find, connect or pair under Bluetooth device.
   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.
7. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Pairing

Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or iDrive to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

8. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
   Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.



If pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

Following the initial pairing

- The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within 2 minutes if the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to your vehicle. This transmission is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

- ▷ Four mobile phones can be paired.
- ▷ Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- ▷ Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone if necessary.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

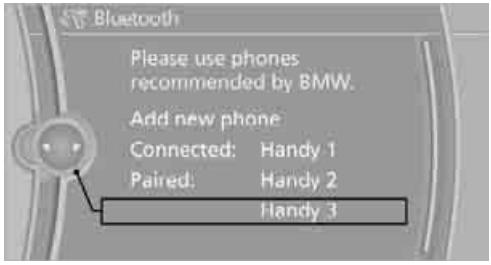
Checking if pairing is unsuccessful

- ▷ Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered both on the mobile phone display and via iDrive.
- ▷ Have you required longer than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey? Then repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? If so, delete the connections with other devices on the mobile phone.
- ▷ The mobile phone no longer reacts? Switch the mobile phone off and then on again or disconnect the power supply.
- ▷ Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ If all items on the list have been checked and the mobile phone still cannot be paired, please contact Customer Relations.

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"
3. Select the desired mobile phone.



Unpairing the mobile phone from the vehicle

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.
The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are also deleted.

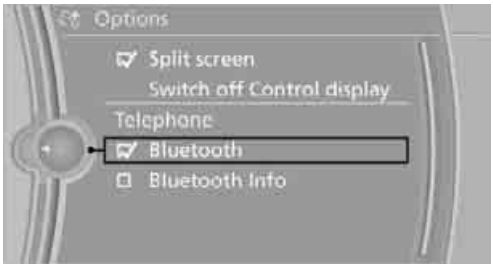
Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

▷ Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used via the mobile phone, e.g., a laptop computer.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth"



Adjusting volume

Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- ▷ Accepting/refusing a call
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers from the phone book
- ▷ Selecting stored phone numbers, e.g., from the list of received calls
- ▷ Ending a call

When the ignition is switched off or in radio readiness, e.g., after taking the remote control out of the ignition switch, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for several minutes.

Speech quality

If the person you are talking to cannot understand you well, this may be due to excessively loud background noises. The full preparation package mobile phone can compensate for these noises to a certain extent. To optimize voice quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- ▷ Reduce background noises, e.g., by closing the windows, reducing the air volume of the automatic climate control or pointing the opened front vent outlets downward
- ▷ Reduce the volume of the hands-free system.

Requirements

- ▷ The logon data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle.

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

or

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

"Reject"

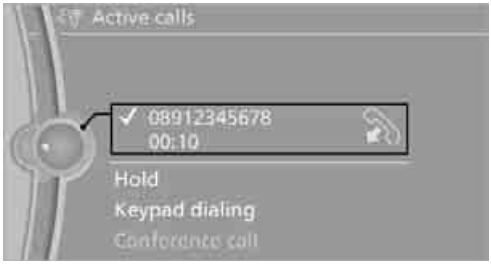
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. Select an active call.



Dialing phone numbers

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select this symbol to establish the connection

or

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The phone number can also be entered using voice commands*, refer to page 185.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are talking to, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your provider.

Calls with multiple parties

You can switch between calls and connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function may need to be enabled by the service provider and the mobile phone may have to be set up accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an active call, you will hear a call waiting signal.

"Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

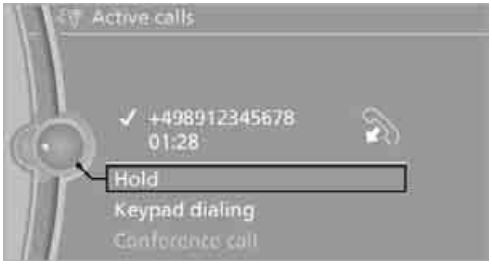
Establishing a second call

Establish another call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Hold"



The existing call is put on hold.

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, toggling

▷ Active call: indicated by a red handset

▷ Call on hold: indicated by a green handset

To switch to the call on hold, select this handset.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

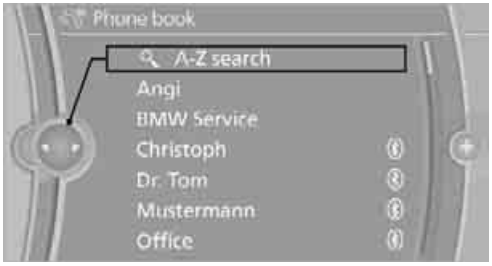
When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended.

Phone book

The phone book accesses the contacts* and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

All contacts with a phone number are displayed. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.



Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone

Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
   A connection is established immediately if calling contacts with one phone number.

   For contacts with several phone numbers:
2. Select the desired phone number.
   The connection is established.

Editing a contact

The entries in the contacts can be changed. When a contact from the mobile phone is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

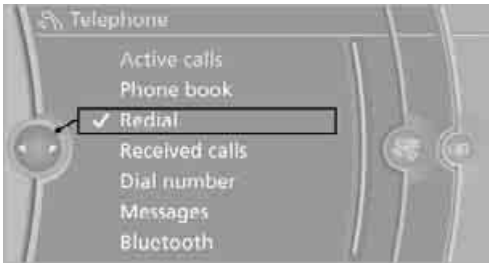
Redialing

The eight phone numbers dialed last are stored.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dialing the number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"



3. Select the desired entry.
   The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

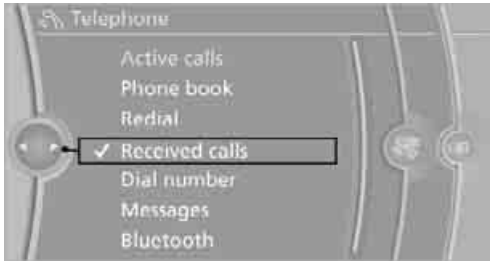
Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store in vehicle"

Received calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



Dialing a number

Select an entry.
The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact"

Messages

Different types of messages can be displayed:

- ▷ My Info messages from the BMW Assist portal
- ▷ Messages from BMW Concierge

Displaying messages

1. "Telephone"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

My Info

To start destination guidance:

1. Select the message that contains the desired destination.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

Dial the number in the message:

1. Select the message that contains the desired number.
2. "Call"

Messages from the Concierge service

To use the address in destination guidance*:

1. Select the message.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

3. Start destination guidance, if necessary.

To dial a phone number:

1. Select the message.
2. "Call"

To store the address:

1. Select the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Deleting messages

1. Select the message to be deleted.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete message"

Switching between the mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the hands-free system when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically changes over to the hands-free mode.

For mobile phones that do not automatically change over to the hands-free mode:

Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can be continued via the hands-free system if necessary. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the hands-free system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

Alternatively, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link, refer to page 180.

Depending on your mobile phone model, poor reception of the wireless communications network can result in the system changing from the hands-free system to the mobile phone.

Operation by voice*

The concept

▷ You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel.

▷ Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. The voice

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

activation system supports you by making announcements and asking questions.

▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements

The same prerequisites as for operation via iDrive apply, refer to page 181.

Voice commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
   An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹.

Example: Dialing phone numbers

To start the dialog:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

You say	The voice commands answers
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
For instance, ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue ?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

In dialogs where text is spoken, e.g., a name rather than a command, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.
You can have the possible commands spoken by the system at any point:

›Help‹.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, for instance:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

Setting volume of instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:

Turn the knob during instructions.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone number

›Delete‹.

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Redialing

To redial the phone number dialed last:

›Redial‹.

Voice phone book

Operating by voice command requires a personal voice phone book.

The entries must be entered using voice commands and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers. Up to 50 entries can be set up. An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

Creating and editing a voice phone book

To store an entry:

An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name.
   The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being requested to do so by the system.
4. To store the phone number:
   ›Save‹.

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

›Delete phonebook‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phonebook‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

Listen to the entries and select:

You can have all the entries of your voice phone book read aloud in the order of input and select a certain entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phonebook‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹, when the desired entry is read aloud.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Notes

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection. Use the SOS button* instead, refer to page 231.

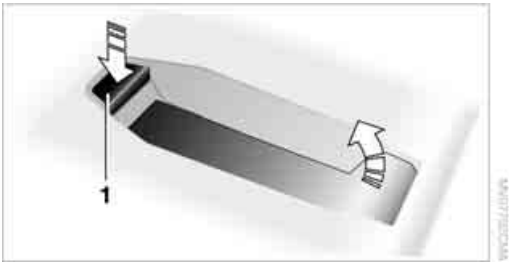
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

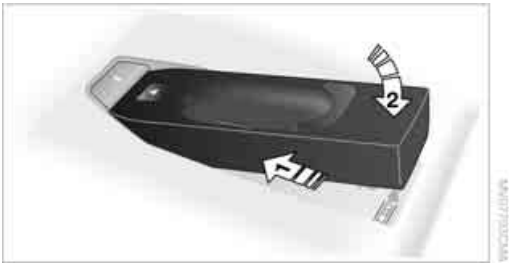
- Say the commands, numbers and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- Keep the doors, windows, glass sunroof*/ panorama glass sunroof* closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Inserting/removing the snap-in adapter*

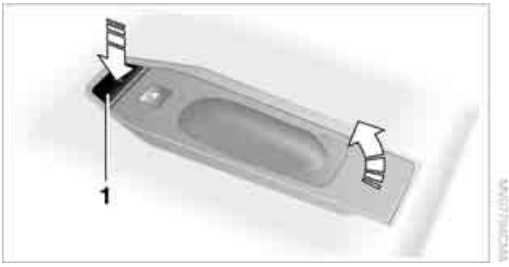
1. Press button **1** and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter in the front and press it downward until it engages.



To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press button **1**.



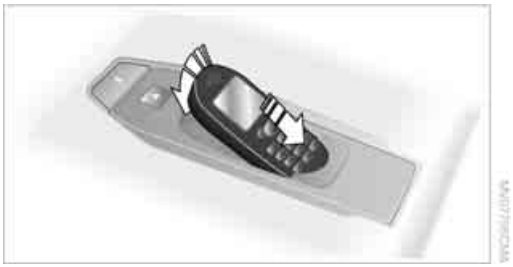
Inserting mobile phone

1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.

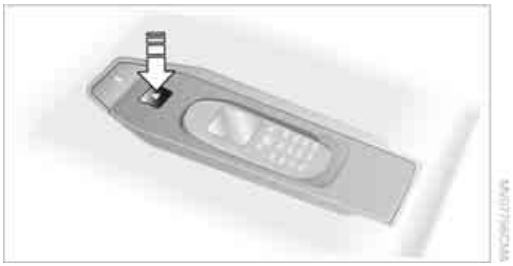
2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged from radio readiness or with the steering unlocked.

▷ To conserve vehicle battery power, avoid using the mobile phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone



Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Contacts*

You can create and edit contacts. The contacts from the mobile phone* are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"

3. If the entry fields are still filled with previous entries, select "Delete input fields".
4. To fill in the entry fields:
   Select the symbol next to the entry field.

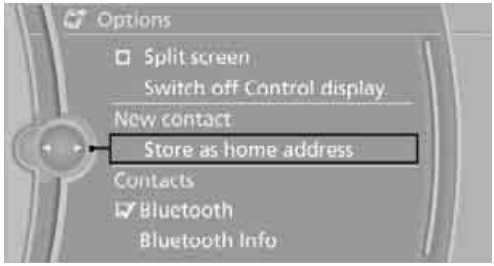
5. Enter the text.

   If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, it is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data in the vehicle. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.◀
6. If applicable, "Store"
7. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying a contact as the home address

A contact can be stored as the home address. It is placed at the top of "My contacts".

1. Create a new contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as home address"



If the home address is deleted, only the content of the home address entry is deleted and not the entry itself.

My contacts

A list of all contacts in the vehicle and on the mobile phone*.

Displaying contacts

"My contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

search is offered. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone*

Displaying the detailed view*

Select the desired contact.
All fields that have been filled in for that contact are displayed.

Selecting a contact as the navigation destination

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired address.

Contacts from the mobile phone* may contain addresses that do not match the navigation data contained in the vehicle and thus cannot be used for destination guidance. In this case: Manually correct the address.

Checking the address as a destination*

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. An address that is stored on the mobile phone can be corrected to match to the navigation data.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

After an address has been corrected, the contact can be stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

Dialing a phone number*

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. "Edit contact"

4. Change the entries.
5. Move the controller to the left.
6. "Yes"

If a contact from the mobile phone* is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone* cannot be deleted.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides a number of different services. For example, the position data of the vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center when an Emergency Request* is sent.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist service will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Requirements

- ▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- ▷ To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Activation must be completed.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.

Offered services

- ▷ Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Automatic collision notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this time.
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
- ▷ TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- ▷ Remote door unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
- ▷ Stolen vehicle recovery: after you report to the police that your vehicle was stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
- ▷ In addition to these services, the optional Convenience Plan offers Concierge service and information for route planning, traffic and weather. A limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center with Critical Calling, such as when the mobile phone is not available or discharged.
  Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

TeleService*

TeleService supports communication with your BMW center.

- ▷ Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the BMW center. In this way, the BMW center can plan its work

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.

- ▷ In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance*.
- ▷ The service varies by country.
- ▷ Connection costs may ensue.
- ▷ Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.
- ▷ Wireless reception is available.
- ▷ The engine is running.

Concierge service*

When you call the BMW Assist Concierge, you can obtain information about, for example, restaurants, emergency pharmacy services, gas stations or hotels, as well as receive the corresponding telephone numbers and addresses.

You can then dial a phone number directly or use an address for destination guidance*.

Starting the Concierge service

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Concierge"

3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to the BMW Concierge.

You are connected to the BMW Concierge service to obtain the required information. You can then have the phone number and address sent to you and, for example, use it for destination guidance in the navigation system. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Assist Concierge service. When an information message is received, a list of the received messages is displayed automatically. Open the message via the message list, refer to page 184.

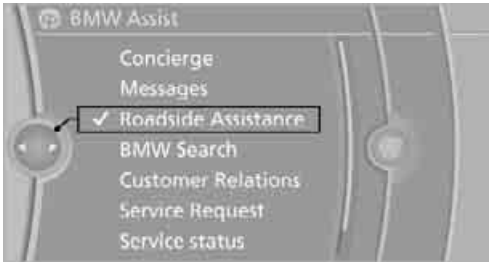
Roadside Assistance

You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown.

Starting Roadside Assistance

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"



The Roadside Assistance number is displayed.

3. Select the number. If a mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to BMW Roadside Assistance.

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Start service"

TeleService Diagnosis*

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. TeleService Diagnosis can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

TeleService Help*

TeleService Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission. TeleService Help can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

Starting TeleService Help

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. The engine is running.
4. "TeleService Help"

After completion of TeleService Help, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Activating BMW Assist*

If the services included in a valid BMW Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

1. Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. "Activate BMW Assist"

Activation may take several minutes. If another menu is opened, activation continues running in the background.

BMW Search*

BMW Search is an online portal that makes certain services available for use in your vehicle, e.g., information on restaurants along your route.

License conditions:

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD., in Japan and other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Requirements

- ▷ Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.
- ▷ The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.
- ▷ The date setting on the Control Display is current.

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "BMW Search"

3. Select "OK", if necessary.

The BMW Search start page is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Using BMW Search

To select and display content:

▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.

▷ Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Home"

Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reload"

Cancel

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

At a glance

Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to Customer Relations.

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the vehicle is equipped with the mobile phone preparation package, a voice connection is established.

Service Request*

At a glance

You can send a request to your BMW center to arrange a service appointment. The TeleService data is transmitted during a Service Request. If possible, your BMW center will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service Request"
3. "Start service"

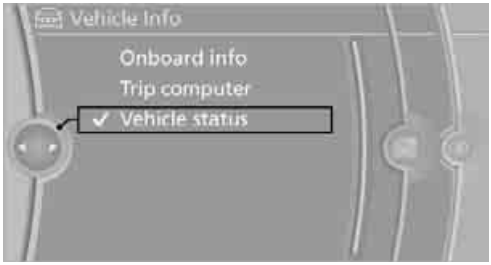
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Automatic Service Request*

The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your BMW center prior to the service deadline. If possible, the center will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Data transfer*

The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Data transfer"

Service status*

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle. This function can be called up via "Options".

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open any menu.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Service status"
5. "Available services"

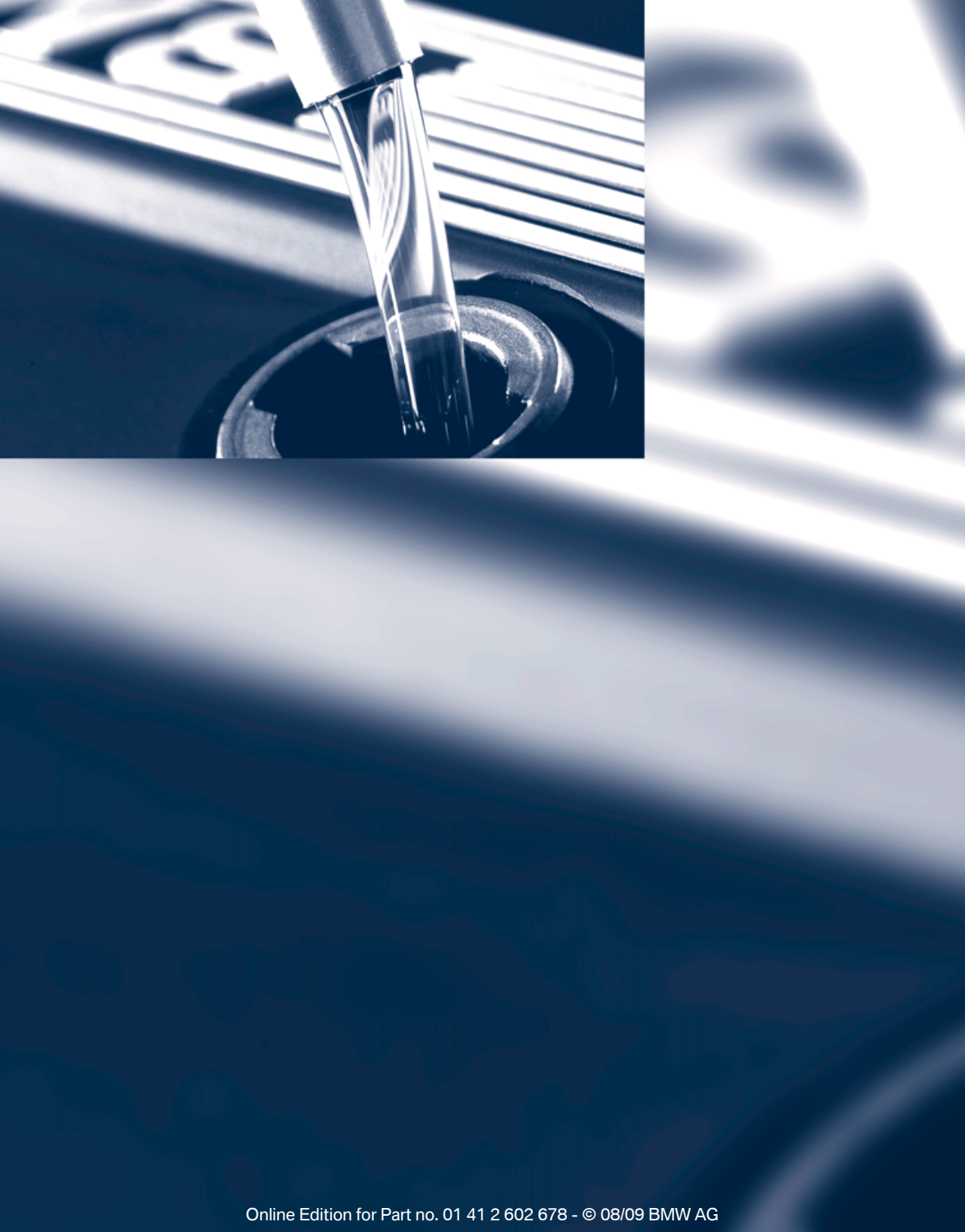
BMW Assist, activating

If the services included in a BMW Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

"Activate BMW Assist"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your car's mobility by supplying important information on vital topics, including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

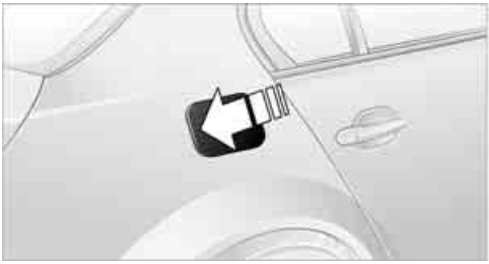
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Refueling

Switch off the engine before refueling; otherwise no fuel can be filled into the tank and a message is displayed.◀

When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. These could become leaky and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident.◀

Fuel filler flap



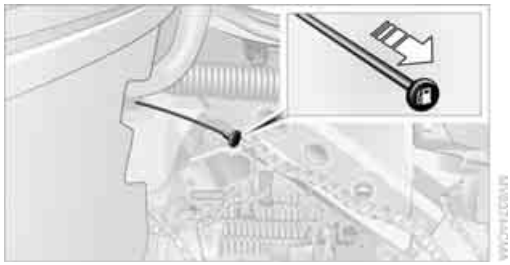
To open and close: press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.

Manual release

If an electrical malfunction should occur, you can unlock the fuel filler flap manually.

Sedan

1. In the cargo bay, raise the floor mat and the cover located beneath it.
2. Open the snap fasteners of the right side panel and take off the side panel.
3. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.



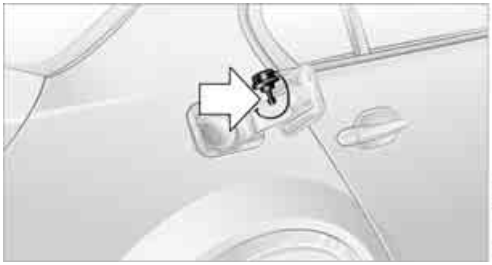
Sports Wagon

1. Unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 119.
2. Open the right-hand side panel in the cargo bay.
3. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety precautions posted at the filling station. Otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury or property damage.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG



Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling; otherwise this leads to

- premature pump shutoff
- a reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 18.5 US gal/70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.1 US gal/8 liters. 550i: approx. 2.6 US gal/10 liters reserve capacity.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel filler cap

Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

Do not crush the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap may not properly seal and fuel vapors can escape.◀

A message* is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.

Fuel specifications

Do not use leaded gasoline, otherwise permanent damage to the catalytic converter will result.
Do not use E85, i.e., fuel that consists of 85% ethanol, or Flex Fuel. Otherwise permanent damage to the engine and the fuel supply system will result.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI Rating is 87.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no affect on the engine life.

Do not use gasoline below the specified minimum quality, otherwise engine damage can result.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in drivability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it as needed, even on the compact tire*: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. Otherwise driving instability or tire damage, and therefore accidents, can result from incorrect tire inflation pressures. Do not drive with depressurized, i.e., flat tires, except run-flat tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 89, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 90.◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for speeds up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column Traveling speeds up to max. 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.

The permissible top speed for these tire inflation pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents may result.◀

Tire inflation pressures for speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

528i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 17 95 W 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
225/50 R 17 94 V M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 245/40 R 18 93 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	36/250	44/300
245/40 R 18 97 V M+S XL	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	38/260	45/310
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	36/250	42/290
Front: 245/35 R 19 93 Y XL Rear: 275/30 R 19 96 Y XL	32/220	38/260	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

535i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 17 95 W 225/55 R 16 95 H M+S 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
225/50 R 17 94 M+S W 225/50 R 17 94 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	38/260	45/310
245/40 R 18 93 W	32/220	38/260	32/220	35/240	38/260	45/310

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
245/40 R 18 97 V M+S XL	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	39/270	46/320
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	38/260	42/290
Front: 245/35 R 19 93 Y XL Rear: 275/30 R 19 96 Y XL	33/230	39/270	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

528i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 17 95 W 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
225/50 R 17 94 V M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S 245/40 R 18 93 W 245/40 R 18 97 V M+S XL	32/220	36/250	32/220	36/250	38/260	45/310
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	38/260	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

535i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 17 95 W 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
225/50 R 17 94 W M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S	32/220	36/250	32/220	36/250	38/260	45/310
245/40 R 18 93 W	33/230	36/250	33/230	36/250	38/260	45/310
245/40 R 18 97 V M+S XL	35/240	38/260	35/240	38/260	38/260	45/310
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W	32/230	35/240	33/230	33/230	38/260	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

535i xDrive Touring

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
225/50 R 17 94 W M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 245/45 R 17 95 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	33/230	41/280	33/230	41/280	38/260	45/310
245/40 R 18 93 Y	32/220	39/270	32/220	38/260	35/240	42/290
245/40 R 18 97 V M+S XL	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300	41/280	48/330
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

550i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/ 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/40 R 18 93 Y	32/220	38/260	32/220	35/240	33/230	41/280
245/45 R 17 95 W 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	38/260	45/310
245/40 R 18 97 V M+S XL	33/230	39/270	33/230	39/270	39/270	46/320
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 Y Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 Y	32/220	35/240	32/220	32/220	33/230	38/260
Front: 245/35 R 19 93 Y XL Rear: 275/30 R 19 96 Y XL	35/240	39/270	33/230	38/260	38/260	45/310
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

For instance 225/50 R 17 94 W

- Nominal width in mm
- Aspect ratio in %
- Radial belt construction
- Rim diameter in inches
- Load rating, (not on ZR tires)
- Speed code letter (in front of the R on ZR tires)

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

For instance DOT xxxx xxx 1009

Manufacturer code for tire make

Tire size and tire design

Tire age

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT … 1009 means that the tire was manufactured in week 10 of 2009.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 208.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

XL

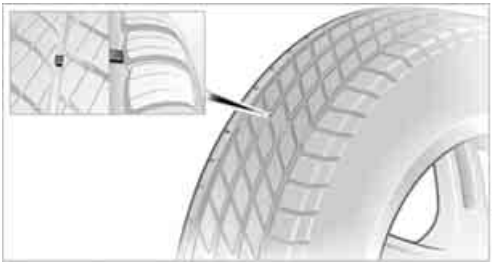
Indicates specially reinforced tires.

Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. For the sake of safety, new tires should be installed.



Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there. Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous to vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Run-flat tires*

You will recognize run-flat tires by the circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire.
Run-flat tires consist of partially self-contained tires and special rims. The sidewall reinforcement ensures that the tire retains some residual safety in the event of pressure drop and driving remains possible to a restricted degree.

To continue driving with a damaged tire:

- ▷ With Flat Tire Monitor, refer to Indication of a flat tire, page 89
- ▷ With Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to Notification of low tire inflation pressure, page 91

New wheels and tires

Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW recommends that you do not use retreaded tires, since driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include the possibly different tire casing structures and the often wide variations in their age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

The right wheels and tires

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

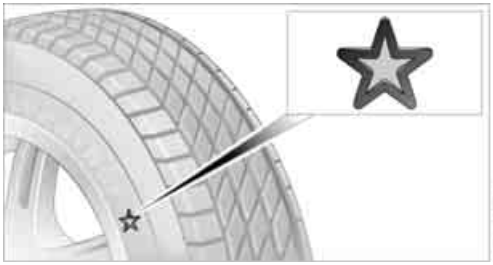
The correct wheel/tire combination also affects various systems whose function would otherwise be impaired, e.g., ABS, DSC or xDrive.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or converting from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 90. Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Recommended tire brands



Certain tire makes are recommended by BMW depending on the tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

When used properly, these tires comply with the most demanding standards for safety and vehicle response.

Run-flat tires

When mounting new tires, or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety. In addition, no spare tire is available in case of a flat tire. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Paying attention to speed

Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents.◀

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Rotating wheels between axles

BMW does not recommend moving the front wheels to the rear or vice versa, as otherwise the handling characteristics may be impaired. With tires of different makes and types* such a change is not permissible.

Snow chains*

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Consult your BMW center for more information.

Use is only permissible in pairs on the rear wheels.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

▷ After mounting snow chains, do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, otherwise incorrect displays can occur.
When driving with snow chains, it may be practical to briefly activate DTC, refer to page 85.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Under the hood

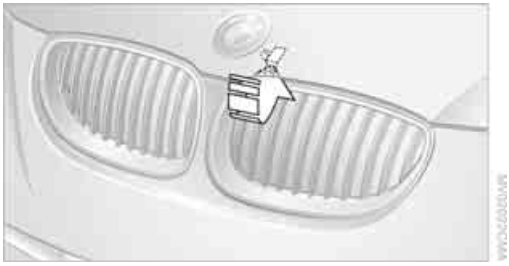
Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training.
If you do not know what repair procedures to follow, have work on your vehicle done only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Hood

Releasing

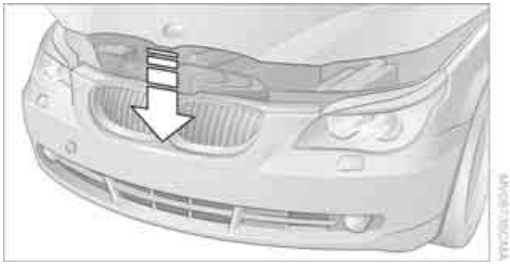
Pull lever.

Opening



Press the release handle and open the hood. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.

Closing



Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.
If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Engine compartment

1 Filler spout for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil

2 Starting-aid terminal, refer to page 232

3 Filler neck for washer fluid of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 65

4 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 214

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

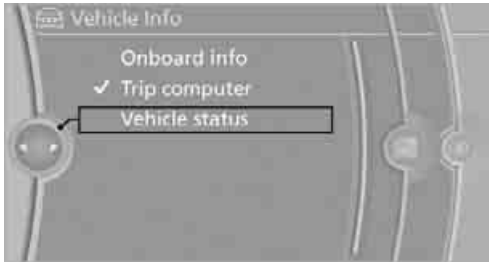
Checking engine oil level

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

The condition for the most accurate indication of the oil level possible is measurement with the engine at operating temperature, i.e., following an uninterrupted drive of at least 6 miles/10 km. You can display the oil level on the Control Display while driving or when stopped on a level surface with the engine running.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Engine oil level"

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level OK"

▷ "Measurement not possible at this time."

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ "Measuring engine oil level...":
This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running, and about 5 minutes while the car is moving.
If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.

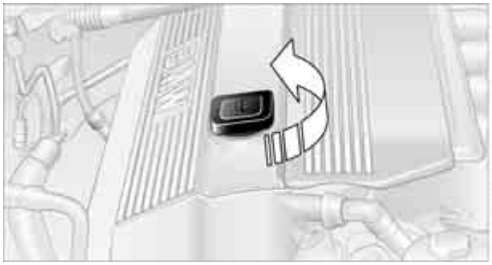
▷ "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!":
Add a maximum of 1 literUS quart/liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer also to Adding engine oil below. If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.

▷ "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked.":

Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◀

▷ "Measurement inactive. Have this checked.":
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer to Service requirements on page 77. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged.◀

Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing. For this reason, thoroughly wash exposed areas of skin with soap and water after such work. Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

Do not use oil additives, as these may result in engine damage.◀

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes. Only use oils of the specification API SM or higher.

Your BMW center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is specified in SAE grades.

The choice of the right SAE grade is based on the climatic conditions in the region in which you normally drive your BMW.

Approved oils belong to the 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 and 5W-30 SAE classes.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

These oils can be used for driving at all outside temperatures.

BMW recommends Castrol

Coolant

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant is composed of equal parts water and a coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard; observe the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

Checking coolant level

1. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct when the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks, refer to the diagram adjacent to the filler neck.

4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level – do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System

The BMW Maintenance System supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, a complete center service history will prove to be an asset of inestimable value.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 77:

- Engine oil
- Brake pads, front and rear separately
- Brake fluid
- Vehicle check
- Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. You should therefore hand over the remote control you last used to drive to the BMW Service Advisor when you take your vehicle in for service.

Make sure the date is set correctly, refer to page 79, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.◀

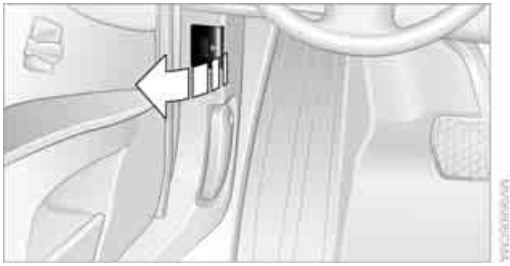
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface



Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located on the driver's side on the left under a cover.

Exhaust-gas values

The warning lamp lights up:
The vehicle emissions are raised. The trip can be continued. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case you should reduce speed and drive to the nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Heavy engine misfiring causes serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

▷ If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system will assume that fuel vapor escapes. Then a display lights up. If the cap is then tightened, the display will go out within a few days.◀

Data recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also subscribed to BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Care

Car-care products

Regular cleaning and care make a significant contribution to retaining your BMW's value.

For the cleaning and care of your vehicle, BMW recommends using only products that BMW has approved for this purpose.

Your BMW center will be glad to advise you about products and services for the cleaning and care of your BMW.

▷ Genuine BMW Care Products are materials tested, laboratory tested, and tested in actual use. They offer optimum care and protection for your vehicle.◀

⚠ Do not use cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents; they can damage your vehicle.◀

⚠ Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous or pose health risks. You should therefore heed the warnings and hazard indications on the packaging. Open the doors or windows on your vehicle whenever cleaning the interior. Make sure there is sufficient ventilation in enclosed spaces. Use only products that are formulated for vehicle cleaning.◀

Exterior care

Washing your vehicle

⚠ In the winter months, it is especially important to ensure that the vehicle is washed on a regular basis. Otherwise, significant soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.◀

⚠ After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. Failure to do so may lead to a reduction in braking efficiency and also to corrosion of the brake rotors.◀

Car washes

Give preference to cloth car washes.

Before driving into the car wash, make sure that it is suitable for your BMW. Pay attention to the following points:

- ▷ Dimensions of your vehicle, refer to page 239.
- ▷ If necessary, fold in the outside rearview mirrors, refer to page 51.
- ▷ Maximum permissible tire width.

⚠ Avoid car washes with rail heights over 4in/10cm, otherwise there is danger of damaging chassis parts.◀

Preparations for driving into the car wash:

- ▷ Deactivate rain sensor to prevent unwanted wiper activation.
- ▷ Deactivate rear window wiper* and protect it from damage. Take appropriate protective measures; inquiring with the car wash operator as needed.
- ▷ Remove additional add-on parts, e.g., spoilers or phone antennas, if they could be damaged.

Automatic transmission

Before driving into the car wash, make sure the vehicle is able to roll by making sure to:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with Comfort Access.
2. Shift into transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

Steam jets/high-pressure washers

⚠ When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, ensure that you maintain sufficient clearance to the vehicle and do not exceed a temperature of 140 °F /60 °C.
Insufficient distance or excessive pressure or temperature can damage parts of the vehicle or can result in water penetration. Follow the oper-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

ating instructions for the high-pressure cleaning jets.◀

When using high-pressure cleaning jets, do not remain in one place for a long time and be sure to maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm from sensors, e.g., Park Distance Control sensors or radar sensors.◀

Hand washing

When washing the vehicle by hand, use plenty of water and car washing shampoo. Clean the vehicle with gentle pressure using a sponge or a washing brush.

Before cleaning the windshield, deactivate the rain sensor or switch off the ignition to prevent unwanted wiper operation.◀

Follow local guidelines for washing vehicles by hand.◀

Headlamps

Do not rub dry and never use abrasives or strong solvents to clean the covers.

Loosen dirt, e.g., insects, with shampoo or insect remover and wash away with plenty of water.

Use a window de icer to remove accumulated ice and snow, not a scraper.

Windows

Use a glass cleaner to clean the inside and outside surfaces of the windows and the glass surfaces of the mirrors.

Do not use quartz-containing cleansers to clean glass surfaces of the mirrors.◀

Paintwork care

Regular care helps your vehicle retain its value and protects the paint from the long-term effects of aggressive substances.

Regionally occurring environmental factors can affect and damage vehicle finish. It is therefore important to tailor the frequency and extent of your car care accordingly.

Immediately remove particularly aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, brake fluid, tree resin, or bird droppings; otherwise, they may damage your paint.

Repairing paint damage

Repair stone damage or scratches immediately, depending on the severity of the damage, to prevent the formation of rust.◀

BMW recommends having paint damage professionally repaired using Genuine BMW finish materials in accordance with factory guidelines.

Waxing

Sealant is required when water no longer beads on the clean surface of the paint. Use only products that contain carnauba wax or synthetic wax to seal your finish.

Rubber gaskets

Treat only with water or a rubber care product.

To avoid noise or damage, do not use products that contain silicone to care for rubber gaskets.◀

Chrome components

Particularly after exposure to road salt, thoroughly cleanse parts like the radiator grille, door handles, or window frames with plenty of water with shampoo added to it. For additional treatment, use chrome polish.

Alloy wheels

Depending on your system, braking can generate dust, which settles on the light-alloy wheels. Remove this dust regularly with acid-free wheel cleaner.

Do not use aggressive, acid-containing, strongly alkaline, or coarse cleansers and do not use steam cleaners at temperatures greater than 140 °F/60 °C, otherwise you may damage your vehicle.◀

Outside sensors

Sensors on the outside of the vehicle, such as Park Distance Control sensors or radar sensors, should be kept clean and free of ice to retain their full function.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Interior care

Upholstery/fabrics

Clean regularly with a vacuum cleaner in order to remove surface dirt.

In the event of more serious soiling such as beverage stains, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfiber cloth in combination with suitable interior cleaners. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

▷ Clean upholstery material over a large area extending out to the seams. Avoid intense friction.◀

⚠ Open Velcro fasteners on pants or other items of clothing can cause damage to the seat covering. Make sure that the Velcro fasteners are closed.◀

Leather/leather coverings

▷ The leather used by BMW is a high quality natural product. Slight patterns in the grain are part of the typical properties of a natural leather.

Dust and dirt from the road chafe in pores and folds and result in considerable wear and cause the leather surface to become prematurely brittle. We therefore suggest that you clean the leather with a dust cloth or vacuum cleaner at regular intervals.◀

Particularly with light-colored leather, make sure to clean it regularly since it has a greater tendency to become soiled.

Treat the leather twice a year with a leather lotion since dirt and grease harm the protective layer of the leather.

Carpets/cargo bay

Carpeting, floor mats, and luggage compartment rugs and paneling can be cleaned with a vacuum or in the event of more serious soiling, cleansed with an interior cleaner.

Floor mats and luggage compartment rugs can be removed for cleaning. When inserting into place, make sure that the seat rails do not protrude over the floor mats; otherwise floor mats can be damaged.

Fluff on new floor mats is a result of the production process and can be removed by repeated vacuuming.

Plastic components inside

Clean the glass cover of the instrument panel, imitation leather surfaces, lamp lenses, and matte components with water and, if necessary, a solvent-free plastic cleaner.

Fine wooden components

Use a damp cloth to clean fine wooden trim panels and components. Follow up by drying with a soft cloth.

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

⚠ Chemical cleaning
Do not clean chemically, as this may destroy the webbing.◀

Inside sensors

Clean inside sensors such as those of the high-beam assistant using a lint-free cloth moistened with glass cleaner.

Displays

Clean displays like the radio or the Control Display using a display-cleaning cloth or a soft, nonabrasive lint-free cloth.

⚠ Avoid using excessive pressure when cleaning displays; otherwise, you could damage them.◀

⚠ Never use chemical-based cleansers or household scouring products. Keep all liquids away from the equipment. Otherwise corrosion or damage to surfaces or electrical components can occur.◀

CD/DVD drives

⚠ Do not use cleaning CDs; they can damage parts of the player.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Storing your vehicle

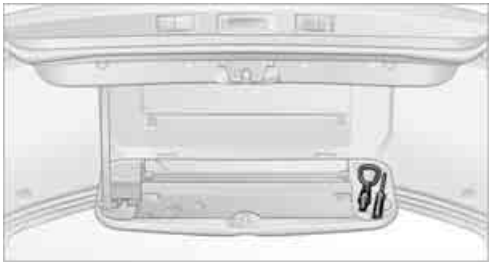
When storing your vehicle for longer than three months, please seek the advice of your BMW center or a workshop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Replacing components

Onboard vehicle tool kit

Sedan



The Onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon

The Onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the left side panel of the cargo bay.

Wiper blade replacement

Front

1. Fold the wiper arm out and grasp firmly.
2. Press the safety tabs together while sliding the wiper blade toward the front to disengage it.
3. Mount the new wiper blade and slide in until it is heard to engage.

Rear*

1. Lift off the wiper arm completely and pull off the wiper blade, refer to arrow.
2. Mount the new wiper blade and press on until it is heard to engage.

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket.◀

A selection of replacement bulbs is available at your BMW center.

⚠ Only replace bulbs when cool, as otherwise you may be burned.◀

⚠ Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the systems/consumers involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

For information on how to care for the headlamps, please follow the instructions on page 217.

▷ For bulbs for which changing is not described, and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.◀

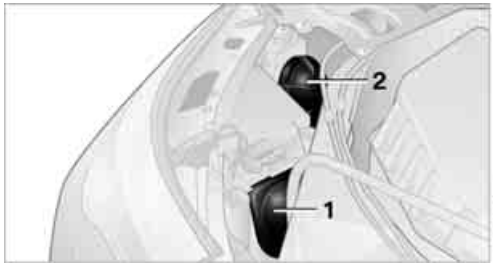
Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

⚠ Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result.◀

Halogen headlamps

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

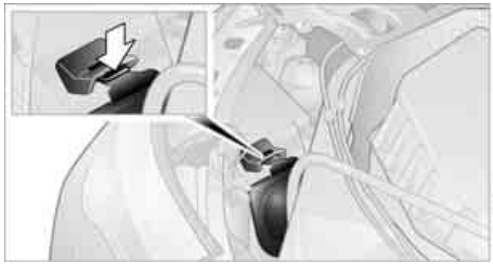


1 Cover cap for low beams

2 Cover cap for high beams

To remove the cover caps:

▷ Low beams: press the detent, arrow, and remove the cover from the guide.



▷ High beams: turn the cover cap to the left and remove.

⚠ Always wear gloves and eye protection – the atmosphere within the H7 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise there is a danger of injuries if the bulb is accidentally damaged during replacement.◀

Low beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.

2. Remove and replace the bulb.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

High beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.

2. Remove and replace the bulb.

Parking and roadside parking lamps

In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

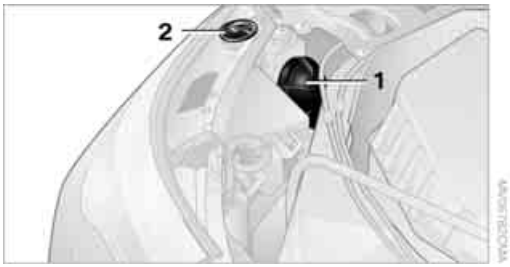
Xenon lamps*

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times. If one of these bulbs should nevertheless fail, it is possible to continue driving with great caution using the fog lamps, provided traffic laws in your area do not prohibit this.

Have work on the xenon lighting system performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries when work is carried out improperly.◀

Access to lamps

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the engine compartment.



1 Cover cap for parking and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

2 Sealing cap for turning lamps*

To remove the covers:

▷ Parking lamps and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps: turn the cover cap to the left and remove.

▷ Turning lamps: turn the sealing cap to the left and remove.

Parking lamps and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

H8 bulb, 35 watts

1. Turn the bulb in the direction of the arrow, in the opposite direction on the other side, and remove.

2. Remove the connector and replace the bulb.

Turning lamps*

H3 bulb, 55 watts

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Remove the sealing cap, refer to Access to lamps.
2. Push the locking bar to the side out of the anchor and fold upward.

3. Remove the connector and take out the bulb.
4. Replace the bulb and reinstall.
5. Fold down the locking bar and engage it.
6. Reconnect the connector.
7. Mount the sealing cap. Watch the markings on the bulb when doing so.

Turn signals, front

21-watt bulb, PY21W

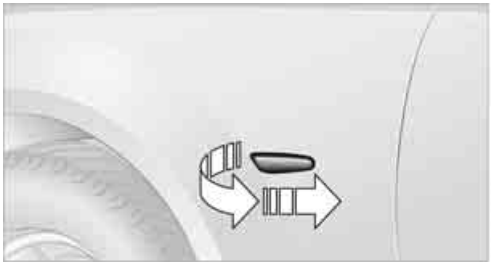
1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.

2. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Side-mounted turn signals

5-watt bulb, W5W

1. Press back against the front edge of the lamp with the tip of your finger, then pivot it out.



2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.
3. Remove the bulb for replacement.

Side marker lamps, front and rear

To replace, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

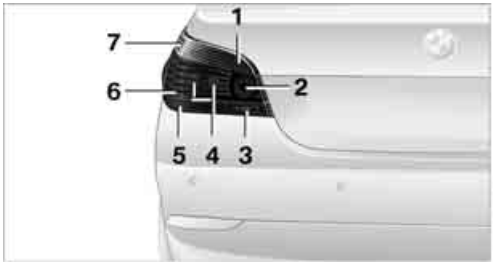
Tail lamps

Sedan

▷ Turn signals **1**, tail lamps **6** and side marker lamps **7** are designed using LED technology. In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

▷ Backup lamps: 16-watt bulb, W16W

▷ Other lamps: 21-watt bulb, P21W



1 Turn signal

2 Tail lamp and brake lamp

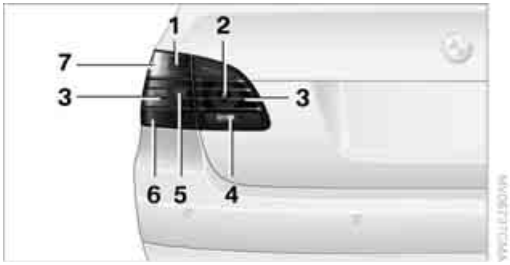
3 Backup lamp

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4 Brake lamp
5 Reflector
6 Tail lamp
7 Side marker lamp

Sports Wagon

- Turn signals **1**, tail lamps **3** and side marker lamps **7** are designed using LED technology. In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.
- Backup lamps: 16-watt bulb, W16W
- Brake lamps: 21-watt bulb, P21W



1 Turn signal
2 Brake lamp
3 Tail lamp
4 Backup lamp
5 Brake lamp
6 Reflector
7 Side marker lamp

Center brake lamp

This lamp uses LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

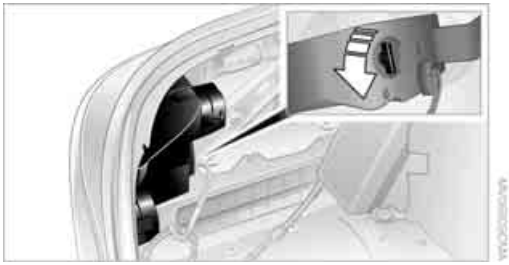
Fender-mounted lamps

Sedan

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the cargo bay.

All the bulbs are integrated into a central bulb fitting.

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Undo the quick-release fasteners of the side panel and pull out the panel.
3. Turn the lock to the left and remove the bulb holder.



4. Backup lamps:
   Remove and replace the bulb.
   Other lamps:
   Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Sports Wagon

1. Right side: Unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 119.
2. Open the side panel.
3. Turn the bulb socket to the left and remove.
4. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

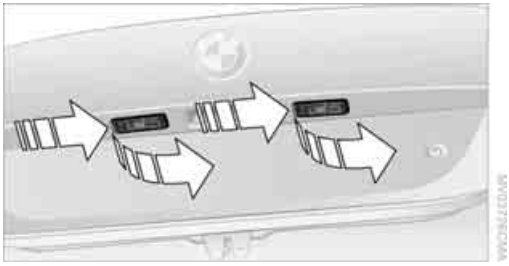
Lamps in luggage compartment lid

License plate lamp

5-watt bulb, C5W

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Insert screwdriver into the slot and press to the right, refer to arrows. This releases the lamp.

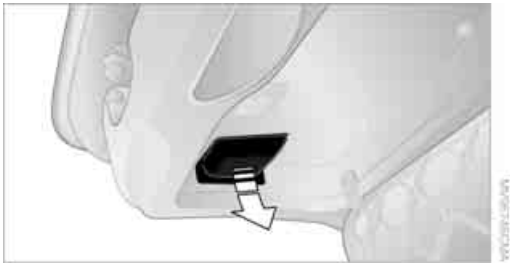


2. Remove the lamp and replace the bulb.

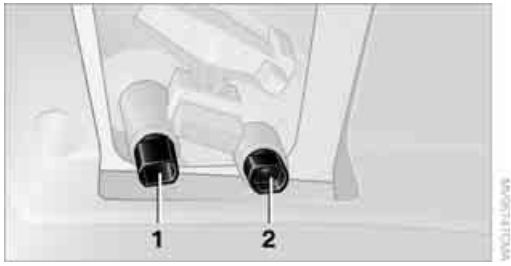
Sports Wagon: Brake lamp and backup lamp

1. Turn the locks to the left and fold down the trim.

2. Fold down the foam insulation.



3. Pull out the bulb holder for the backup lamp **1** or brake lamp **2** downward.



4. Backup lamp: remove the bulb for replacement.
   Brake lamp: apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Changing wheels

Safety precautions in the event of a flat tire or wheel change: park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers. Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.
Change the wheel only on a level, firm surface which is not slippery. The vehicle or the jack could slip to the side if you attempt to raise the vehicle on a soft or slippery surface such as snow, ice, tiles, etc.
Position the jack on a firm support surface.
Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.
To avoid serious or fatal injury: never lie under the vehicle, and never start the engine while it is supported by the jack.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

What you will need

To avoid rattling noises later on, note the positions of the tools before removing them, then return them to their initial positions after completing work.

1 Chock*

2 Vehicle jack*

3 Lug wrench*

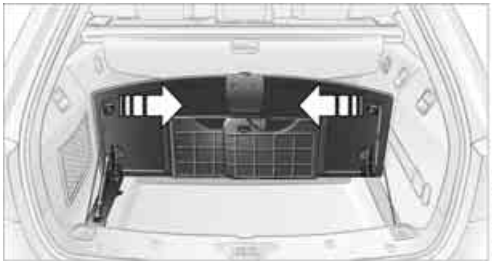
The tools are located in the mount under the floor mat or floor panel flap.

1. Lift up floor mat or floor panel flap and cover located beneath it.
2. Take out the required tools.
3. After using the tools, return them to the storage space.

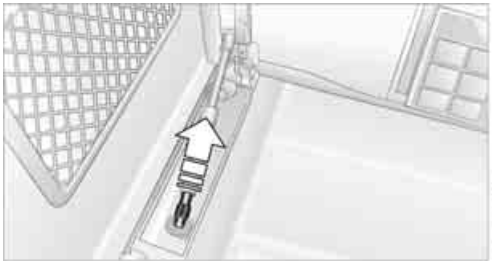
With run-flat tires, no tools are provided for wheel changes. They can be purchased as accessories at your BMW center.◀

Sports Wagon: removing and installing floor panel flap of storage area

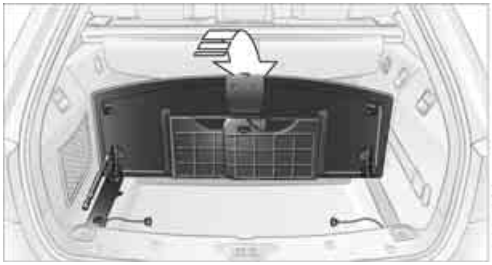
1. Unhook the luggage compartment roller cover at the rear.
2. Raise the floor panel flap.
3. Unhook the two catch straps at the top.



4. Unlock the gas spring strut, refer to arrow, and remove.



5. Fold over the floor panel flap toward the front to release it and remove.

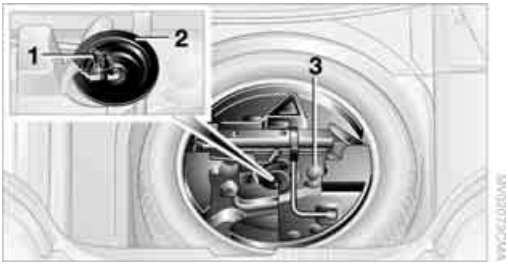


6. Open the front floor panel flap.
7. Swing up the spare tire cover and hook the hooks into the upper frame of the tailgate opening.
8. Take out the cross support upward.

When installing the floor panel flap, proceed in the reverse order and press down the hinge covers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Compact wheel*



1. Unscrew the wing nut **1**.
2. Remove the washer **2** laterally.
3. Take out the tool mounts **3**.
4. Remove the compact wheel.

Preparing wheel change

1. Observe the safety precautions above.
2. Prevent the vehicle from rolling:
   Place the chock behind the front wheel on the other side of the vehicle, or on inclines, in front of this wheel. On steeply inclined roads, always secure the vehicle against rolling.
3. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking up vehicle

1. Position the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel so that the entire surface of the jack base rests on the ground perpendicularly beneath the jacking point.

   The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury.◀

2. Guide the jack head into the rectangular recess of the jacking point when cranking up, refer to illustration detail.

3. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised from the ground.

Mounting a wheel

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Also clean the lug bolts.
3. Position the new wheel or compact wheel. Secure the wheel by screwing at least two lug bolts into opposite bolt holes.
   When you mount wheels other than Genuine BMW light-alloy wheels, different lug bolts may also be required.
4. Screw in the remaining lug bolts. Tighten all the bolts securely in a diagonal pattern.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack from beneath the vehicle.

After mounting

1. Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

   To ensure safety, always have the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench as soon as possible to ensure that they are tightened to the specified torque. Otherwise, incorrectly tightened lug bolts are a hidden safety risk. The tightening torque is 88.5 lb ft/120 Nm.◀

2. When stowing the wheel and tools in the vehicle, execute these steps in the reverse order.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Check and correct the tire inflation pressure at the earliest opportunity.

   Protect valve stems with valve stem seal caps against dirt and contamination. Dirt in valve stems is a frequent source of gradual air loss.◀

4. Initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 89, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 90.
5. Replace the damaged tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire balanced.

Driving with compact wheel

Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

The driving characteristics change, for example reduced track stability on braking, extended braking distance, and altered self-steering characteristics in the limit range. In conjunction with winter tires, these characteristics are more pronounced.

Only one compact wheel may be mounted. Restore the wheels and tires to their original size as quickly as possible. Failure to do so is a safety risk.◀

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine switched off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 232.

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or bring them to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always restrain the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

Following a temporary power failure, e.g., due to a discharged battery, the use of some equipment will be restricted, requiring its reinitialization. In the same way, individual settings are lost and must be updated again:

- Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 46.
- Time and date
  Must be updated again, refer to page 78.
- Radio
  In some cases, radio stations may have to be stored again, refer to page 156.
- Navigation system
  You must wait until the system becomes functional again, refer to page 132.
- Glass roof, electric
  It may only be possible to raise the glass roof. The system must be initialized, refer to page 40.
- Panorama glass roof
  It may only be possible to raise the glass roof. The system must be reinitialized, refer to page 41.
- Active steering
  The system automatically initializes itself briefly during a trip. The system is deactivated during this time, refer to page 92.
- xDrive
  The system automatically initializes itself during a trip. Indicator lamps light up during this time. If the lamps do not disappear during the current trip, have the system checked.
- Power windows
  The pinch prevention system for the power windows must be reinitialized, refer to page 38.

Talk to your BMW center before placing the stored vehicle back in service.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

Sedan

Spare fuses, plastic tweezers and fuse allocation diagram are located in the compartment for the onboard tool kit, refer to page 221.

Sports Wagon

Spare fuses and a pair of plastic tweezers are contained in the onboard tool kit, refer to page 221. A fuse allocation diagram is located in the cargo bay behind the right-hand side panel.

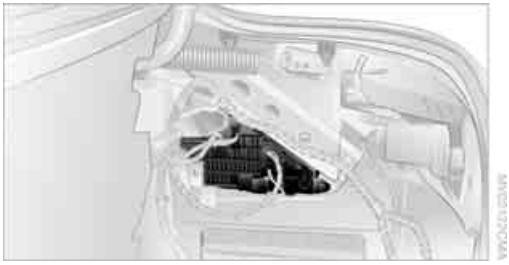
In glove compartment

1. Release both quick-release fasteners.

2. Fold the cover forward or remove.

Sedan: in cargo bay

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Release the quick-release fastener of the right side panel and pull out the panel.



Sports Wagon: in cargo bay

1. Unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 119.
2. Open the right-hand side panel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency request

Requirements

- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.
  Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 194.
- ▷ Radio readiness is activated.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is functional.
- ▷ Full preparation package mobile phone. With this equipment, an emergency request is still possible when no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.

Once your BMW Assist subscription expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. If the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, Emergency Requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Initiating an emergency request

1. Briefly press protective cover to open.
   Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

When the Emergency Request is received at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and arranges for additional steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

In the event of a BMW Assist emergency call, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of your vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. The BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you, though.

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the button.

⚠ For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◀

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sedan

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon

Release the two quick-release fasteners and fold down the trim piece.

First aid kit*

Some of the articles contained in the first aid kit have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace the contents concerned in good time if necessary.

Sedan

The first aid kit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon

The first aid kit is located in the right side panel of the cargo bay. Before opening the side panel, pull the retaining strap* toward the rear by its rear end and unhook it.

Roadside Assistance*

Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

With BMW Assist you can contact Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 192.

Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

⚠ To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

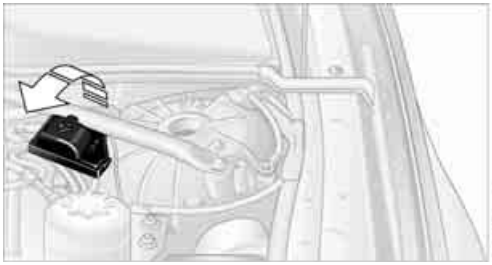
There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables.◀

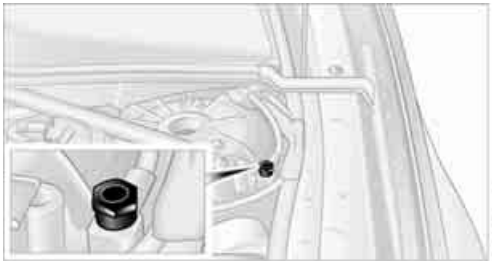
In your BMW, the so-called jump-starting terminal in the engine compartment serves as a positive terminal for the battery, also refer to engine compartment overview on page 212. The cover cap is marked with a +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW jump-starting terminal. To do so, pull the tab.



2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a jump-starting terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/– to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

   Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative terminal.



5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting engine

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting and towing

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using tow fitting

Always keep the screw-in tow fitting with the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sedan:
It is located in the toolkit in the luggage compartment lid, refer to page 221.

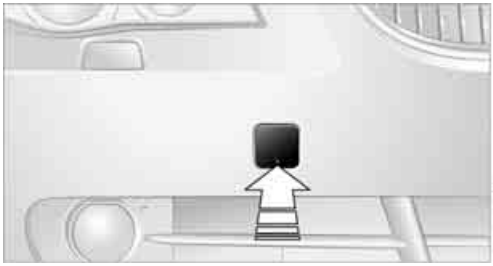
Sports Wagon:
It is located in the toolkit behind the left side panel in the cargo bay, refer to page 221.

Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◀

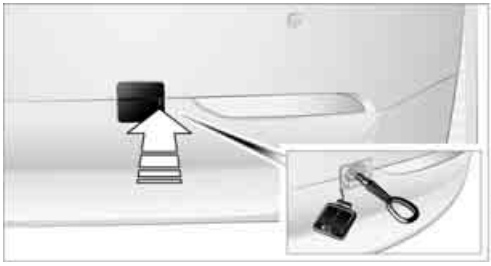
Access to screw thread

Press the arrow symbol on the cover in the bumper.

Front



Rear



Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 57, otherwise the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, as otherwise the steering can turn to the left or right. When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. This then requires increased effort for braking and steering. Active steering is deactivated and larger steering wheel movements are required.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Automatic and sport automatic transmission

Before towing, manually release the transmission lock, even if there is no malfunction in the transmission. Otherwise there is a risk that the transmission lock will engage during towing.◀

Manually unlocking and locking transmission lock, refer to page 61.

Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph/70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles/150 km; otherwise the automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result.◀

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed, otherwise it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

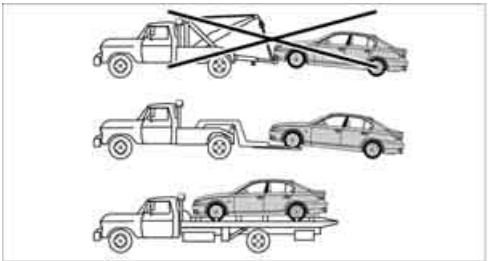
⚠ Only attach the tow bar to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

⚠ To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Only attach tow ropes to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

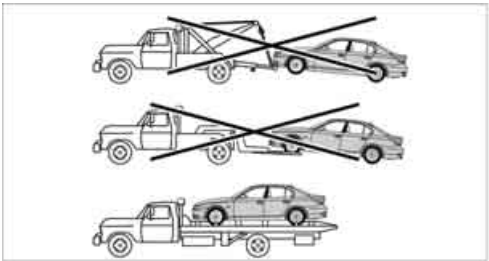
With tow truck



Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

With a tow truck: xDrive

⚠ Do not tow a BMW with xDrive with just the front or rear axle raised, otherwise the wheels could lock up and the transfer case could be damaged.◀



Have the BMW transported only on a flatbed surface.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle if possible, but instead start the engine by means of jump starting, refer to page 232. With a catalytic converter, tow-starting should only be carried out with the engine cold, and with automatic transmissions, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 57.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Tow-start with the clutch completely depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch again completely.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system and an index that will help you find information quickly.

Technical data

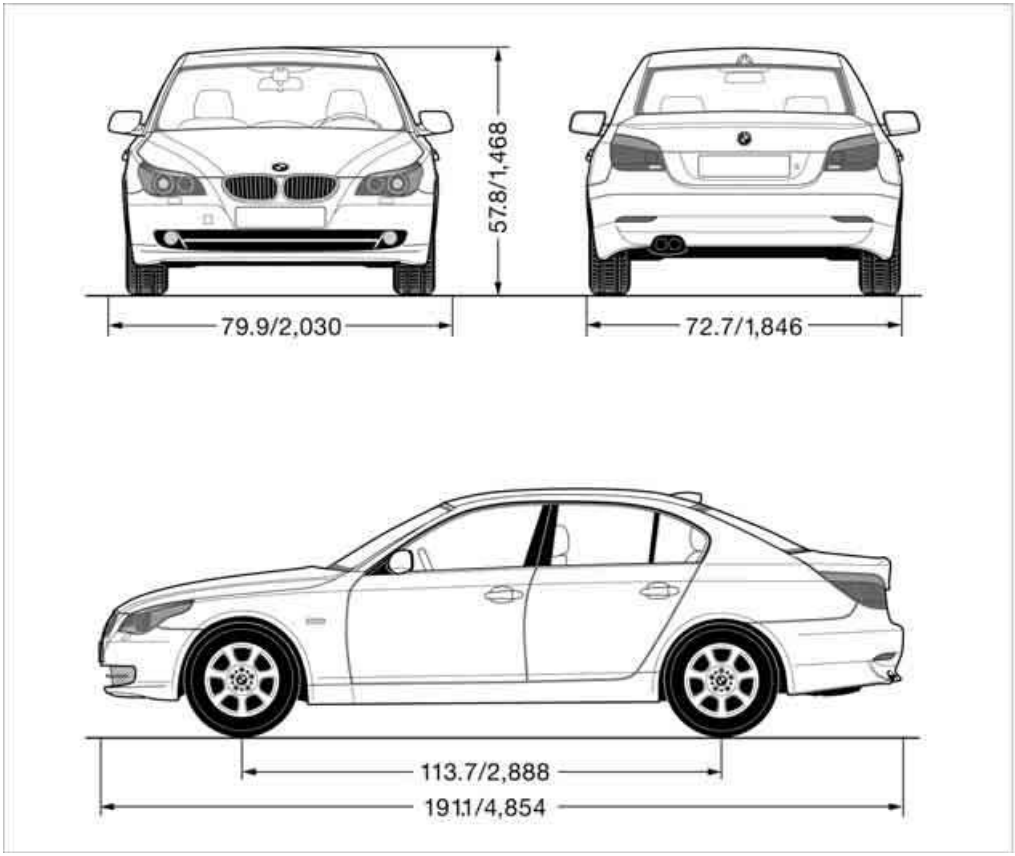
Engine data

		528i	535i	550i
Displacement	cu in/cm³	182.8/2,996	181.8/2,979	292.8/4,799
No. of cylinders		6	6	8
Maximum output	hp	230	300	360
at engine speed	rpm	6,500	5,800	6,300
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	200/270	300/407	360/488
at engine speed	rpm	2,750	1,400-5,000	3,400

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dimensions

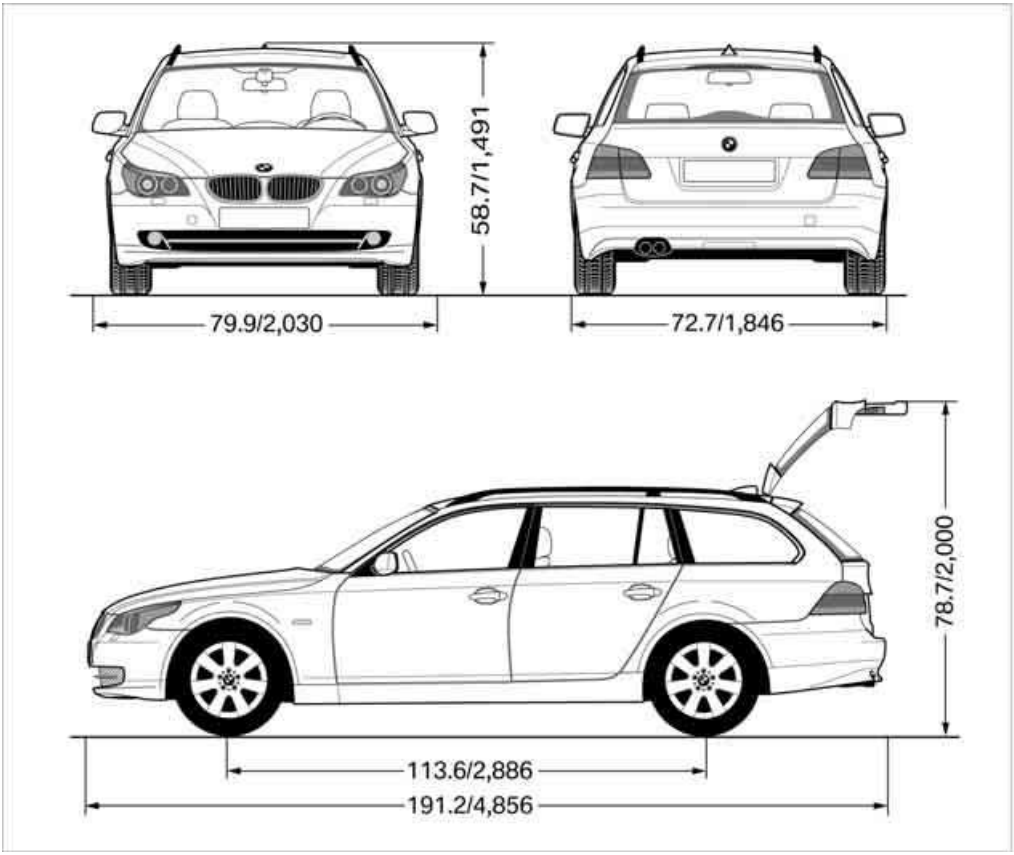
Sedan



All dimensions are given in inches/mm.
Vehicle height with xDrive: 58.3 in/1,482 mm
Smallest turning circle diam.: 37.5 ft/11.4 m, with xDrive 39 ft/11.9 m

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sports Wagon



All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 39 ft/11.9 m

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Weights

Sedan		528i	535i	550i
Curb weight				
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	3,505/1,590	3,660/1,660	3,946/1,790
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,571/1,620	3,703/1,680	3,968/1,800
Approved gross vehicle weight				
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	4,607/2,090	4,872/2,210	5,048/2,290
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	4,673/2,120	4,872/2,210	5,070/2,300
Load	lbs./kg	1,102/500	1,102/500	1,102/500
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,227/1,010	2,359/1,070	2,469/1,120
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,601/1,180	2,711/1,230	2,733/1,240
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100	220/100	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	18.4/520	18.4/520	18.4/520

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Sedan		528i xDrive	535i xDrive
Curb weight			
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	3,670/1,710	3,902/1,770
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,704/1,730	3,946/1,790
Approved gross vehicle weight			
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	4,839/2,195	5,004/2,270
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	4,883/2,215	5,048/2,290
Load	lbs./kg	1,102/500	1,102/500
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,315/1,050	2,315/1,050
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,689/1,220	2,689/1,220
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	18.4/520	18.4/520

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Sports Wagon		535i xDrive
Curb weight		
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	4,100/1,860
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	4,144/1,880
Approved gross vehicle weight		

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sports Wagon		535i xDrive
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	5,291/2,400
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	5,335/2,420
Load	lbs./kg	1,190/540
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,381/1,080
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,866/1,300
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	17.7-58.3/500-1,650

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel grade: page 201
of that reserve	US gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8	
550i	US gal/liters	approx. 2.6/10	
Window cleaning system			For more details: page 65
▷ Sedan	US quarts/liters	approx. 3.2/3	
▷ with headlamp cleaning system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	
▷ Sports Wagon	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Short commands of voice activation system*

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice activation system.

Useful short commands

Function	Command
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Tone control	›Tone‹
Selecting the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the contacts*	›Contacts‹
Displaying the phone book*	›Phonebook‹
Opening BMW Assist*	›B M W Assist‹
Opening the home address*	›Home address‹
Opening destination entry*	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance*	›Guidance‹

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D ... track ...‹ e.g., CD 3 track 5
Selecting a track	›C D track ...‹ e.g., track 5
Opening the CD and Multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD	›C D and D V D‹
CD and DVD menu	›C D and D V D‹
Selecting a DVD	›D V D ...‹
Entertainment details on the split screen	›Entertainment details‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Function	Command
Calling up the current playback	›Current playback‹
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Searching for music; opening the menu	›Music search‹
Playing back the most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Opening external devices	›External devices‹

Tone control

Function	Command
Opening the tone control	›Tone‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Calling up the radio	›Radio‹
Calling up FM	›F M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹
Selecting a radio station	›Station …‹ e.g., W-PLJ
Calling up a station	›Select station‹ e.g., W-PLJ

AM

Function	Command
Calling up AM	›A M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹

Weather Band

Function	Command
Selecting the Weather Band	›Weather band‹
Switching on the Weather Band	›Weather band on‹
Selecting a Weather Band station	›Select a weather channel‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Calling up the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Satellite radio channel‹ e.g., channel 2

Presets

Function	Command
Calling up the stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset ...‹ e.g., stored station 2

Telephone

Function	Command
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
Displaying the phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialing	›Redial‹
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
Displaying the list of messages	›Messages‹
Displaying Bluetooth	›Bluetooth‹

Navigation

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Opening destination entry	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
Ending destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹
Opening the route criteria	›Route preference‹
Opening the route	›Route information‹
Switching on the voice instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a voice instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Function	Command
Switching off the voice instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Displaying the address book	›Address book‹
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Opening the traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Perspective map‹
Automatic scaling of the map*	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Changing the scale	›Map scale‹
Scale ... feet*	›Map scale ... feet‹ e.g., map scale 100 feet
Scale ... meters*	›Map scale ... meters‹ e.g., map scale 100 meters
Scale ... kilometers*	›Map scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., map scale 5 kilometers
Scale ... miles*	›Map scale ... miles‹ e.g., map scale 5 miles
Scale ... yards*	›Map scale ... yards‹ e.g., map scale 100 yards

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off the split screen	›Turn off split screen‹
Adapting the split screen	›Split screen content‹
Split screen current position	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen map facing north	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen direction of travel	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen perspective	›Split screen perspective‹
Automatically scaling the split screen	›Split screen automatic scaling‹
Split screen scale ... feet*	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 feet
Split screen scale ... meters*	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 meters

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Function	Command
Split screen scale ... kilometers*	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 kilometers
Split screen scale ... miles*	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 miles
Split screen scale ... yards*	›Split screen scale ... yards‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 yards
Split screen, computer	›Split screen on board info‹
Split screen, trip computer	›Splitscreen trip computer‹

Contacts

Function	Command
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
My contacts	›My contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

BMW Assist

Function	Command
Opening BMW Assist	›B M W Assist‹
Opening BMW Search*	›B M W Search‹
Opening the Internet*	›Internet‹

Vehicle information

Function	Command
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the trip computer	›Trip computer‹
Opening the vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Opening the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

Settings

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Selecting the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the options	›Options‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Function	Command
Central screen settings	›Control display‹
Opening the time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Opening the language and unit settings	›Language and units‹
Opening the speed limit settings	›Limit‹
Opening the light menu	›Lighting‹
Selecting the door lock	›Door locks‹

Equipment

Function	Command
Selecting the air conditioning	›Climate‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 85
– indicator lamp 87
ACC, refer to Active cruise control 66
Accessories 6
Accident, refer to Emergency request 231
Acoustic signal, refer to Check Control 79
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 108
Activation times of parked car ventilation, preselecting 109
Active backrest width, adjusting 45
Active cruise control 66
– indicator lamp 70
– radar sensors 70
– selecting distance 68
– warning lamps 70
Active front head restraints 47
Active seat 50
Active seat ventilation 50
Active steering 92
– warning lamp 93
Adapter for spare key 26
Adaptive brake assistant 85
Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display 93
Adaptive Light Control 101
Additional connection of music player in mobile phone 172
Additives
– coolant 214
– engine oil, refer to Approved engine oils 213
Address for navigation
– entering 133
Adjusting interior temperature 106
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 152
Adjusting thigh support 44
Airbags 93
– indicator/warning lamp 95
– indicator lamp for front passenger airbags 94
– sitting safely 43
Air distribution
– automatic 106
– manual 107
Airing, refer to Ventilation 108
Air recirculation
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 107
– recirculated-air mode 107
Air recirculation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 107
Air supply, automatic climate control 105
Air volume 107
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 201
Alarm system 35
– avoiding unintentional alarms 36
– interior motion sensor 36
– switching off alarm 35
– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor 36
– tilt alarm sensor 36
Albums of music collection 169
Alloy wheels 218
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 209
All-wheel drive, refer to xDrive 86
Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Altering stretch of road 143
Antenna for mobile phone 178
Antifreeze
– coolant 214
– washer fluid 65
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 35
Anti-theft system, refer to Central lokking system 27
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 241
Approved engine oils 213
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 241
Armrest, refer to Center armrest
– rear 116
Around the center console 14
Around the steering wheel 10
Arrival time
– refer to Computer 76
Ashtray
– front 114
– rear 115
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 85
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 107
Audio 152
– controls 152
– switching on/off 152
– tone control 152
– volume 152
Audio device, external 113

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Automatic
– air distribution 106
– air volume 106
– cruise control 66
– garage door opener 110
– headlamp control 100
– recirculated-air control AUC 107
– steering wheel adjustment 45
– tailgate operation 34
Automatic climate control 105
– automatic air distribution 106
– parked car ventilation 109
– settings via iDrive 108
– switching on and off 108
– ventilation in rear 108
Automatic closing of doors, refer to Automatic soft closing 31
Automatic curb monitor 51
Automatic lighting
– refer to Automatic headlamp control 100
– refer to Daytime running lamps 101
– refer to Interior lamps 104
– refer to Pathway lighting 101
– refer to Welcome lamps 100
Automatic lights
– refer to High-beam Assistant 102
Automatic low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant 102
Automatic luggage compartment roller cover, Sports Wagon 117
Automatic Service Request 196
Automatic soft closing 31
Automatic speed reduction for descents, refer to HDC Hill Descent Control 86
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– interlock 60
– kick down 60
– manually unlocking and locking transmission lock 61
– shiftlock 60
– towing 234
– tow-starting 235
– with Comfort Access 37
AUTO program for automatic climate control 106
AUX-IN port 172
Available services 196
Average fuel consumption 75
– setting units 76
Average speed, refer to Computer 75
Avoiding freeways for navigation 142
Avoiding unintentional alarms 36
Axle loads, refer to Weights 241

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 45
Backrests, refer to Seats 44
Backrest width adjustment 44
Back seats, refer to Rear seats
Backup lamps, replacing bulbs 224
Band-aids, refer to First aid kit 232
Bass, refer to Tone control 152
Battery, refer to Vehicle battery 229
– jump starting 232
Battery replacement
– remote control for Comfort Access 38
BC button, refer to Computer 75
Being towed 234
Belts, refer to Safety belts 48
Beverage holder, refer to Cupholders 114
Blower, refer to Air volume 107
Bluetooth, activating/deactivating 180
BMW
– Car Shampoo 219
BMW Assist, activating 194, 196
BMW Assist 192
BMW homepage 4
BMW maintenance system 215
BMW Night Vision 96
– activating 98
– cleaning camera 98
– cleaning camera, refer to Wiper system 64
– deactivating 98
– making settings 98
BMW Search 194
BMW website 4
Bottle holder, refer to Cupholders 114
Bracket for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter 188
Brake assistant 85
– adaptive 85
Brake force display 93
Brake lamps
– replacing bulbs 224
– two-stage 93
Brake rotors
– breaking-in 124
– refer to Braking safely 126

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Brakes
– ABS Antilock Brake System 85
– brake assistant 85
– brake force display 93
– breaking-in 124
– CBC Cornering Brake Control 85
– electronic brake-force distribution 85
– parking brake 59
– refer to Braking safely 126
– warning lamps 13
Brake system 124
– brake pads 124
– breaking-in 124
– disk brakes 126
– warning lamp 87
Braking safely 126
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 232
Breaking-in brake pads 124
Breaking-in the clutch 124
Breaking-in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 124
Break-in period 124
Brightness of Control Display 83
Button for starting engine, refer to Start/Stop button 57

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 6
Call
– accepting 181
– ending 182
– rejecting 182
Calling, refer to Phone numbers, dialing 182
Can holder, refer to Cupholders 114
Capacities 242
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 229
Care 217
– car-care products 217
– carpets 219
– car washes 217
– CD/DVD player 219
– chrome components 218
– displays 219
– exterior 217
– fine wooden components 219
– hand washing 218
– headlamps 218
– high-pressure cleaning jets 217
– interior 219
– leather 219
– light-alloy wheels 218
– paint 218
– plastic components 219
– rubber gaskets 218
– safety belts 219
– sensors and cameras 219
– upholstery and cloth-covered paneling 219
– windows 218
Cargo
– refer to Cargo loading 126
– securing 128
– securing with ski bag 120
Cargo bay
– capacity 241
– emergency operation, refer to Opening manually, Sports Wagon 33
– emergency release 32
– expanding, Sports Wagon 117
– floor panel flap, refer to Compartment in floor, Sports Wagon 118
– locking separately 31
– opening/closing, refer to Luggage compartment lid/tailgate 31
– opening from inside 31
– opening from inside, Sports Wagon 33
– opening from outside 31
– opening from outside, Sports Wagon 33
– opening with remote control 29
Cargo bay cover, refer to Luggage compartment roller cover 117
Caring for the vehicle finish 218
Car key, refer to Keys/remote control 26
Car phone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 112
– refer to separate operating instructions
Car phone, refer to Telephone 178
Car radio, refer to Radio 155
Car Shampoo 219
Car wash 58
– with Comfort Access 37
Car washes 217
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 125
CBC Cornering Brake Control 85
CBS Condition Based Service 215
CD, audio playback 160

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CD changer 160, 164
– controls 152
– fast forward/reverse 162
– filling or emptying the magazine 164
– random sequence 161
– selecting a track 160
– switching on/off 152
– tone control 152
– volume 152
CD player 160
– controls 152
– fast forward/reverse 162
– random sequence 161
– selecting a track 160
– switching on/off 152
– tone control 152
– volume 152
Center armrest
– front 112
– rear 116
Center brake lamp 225
Center console 14
Central locking
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
Central locking system 27
– Comfort Access 36
Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Changes, technical, refer to Parts and accessories 6
Changing language on Control Display 82
Changing scale for navigation 145
Changing trips 141
Changing units of measure on Control Display 76
Changing wheels 208, 226
CHECK button 80
Check Control 79
Check Gas Cap 201
Checking the air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 202
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 54
Child restraints 53
Child restraint systems 53
Child-safety lock 56
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 53
Chime, refer to Check Control 79
Chock 227
Chrome-plated parts 219
Chrome polish 219
Cigarette lighter 114
Cigarette lighter socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 115
Cleaning your BMW, refer to Care 217
Clock 74
– 12h/24h format 79
– setting time 78
– setting time and date 79
Closing
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
Closing fuel filler cap 201
Clothes hooks 113
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Engine, starting 58
Combination instrument, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Comfort Access 36
Comfort access
– observe in car wash 37
– replacing battery, remote control 38
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
Comfort seat 44
Compact wheel
– inflation pressure 203
– wheel change 228
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 57
Compartments
– in cargo bay, Sports Wagon 118
– refer to Storage area loading options, Sports Wagon 119
– refer to Storage compartments 113
Computer 75
– displays on Control Display 76
Concierge service 193
Condensation, refer to When vehicle is parked 126
Condition Based Service CBS 215
Confirmation signals for locking and unlocking 29
Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices 115
Consumption, refer to Average consumption 75
Consumption indicator
– Energy Control 75
Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 75
Contacts
– creating 190
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– setting brightness 83
– switching off/on 19
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls, refer to Cockpit 10
Convenient opening and closing
– glass sunroof 28
– windows 28
– windows and glass sunroof with Comfort Access 37
Coolant 214
– checking level 214
– temperature 74
Cooling, maximum 107
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 214

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Cooling function, automatic climate control 107
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 214
Copyright 2
Cornering Brake Control CBC 85
Country codes DVD 162
Country of destination for navigation 133
Courtesy lamps 104
Cradle for telephone or mobile phone 112
Cruise control 65
– active cruise control 66
Cruising range 75
Cupholders 114
Curb weight, refer to Weights 241
Current consumption, refer to Energy Control 75
Current playback
– external devices 174
– of music collection 169
Customer Relations 195
Cylinders, refer to Engine data 238

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Dashboard lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 104
Data, technical 238
– dimensions 239
– engine 238
– weights 241
Data transfer 196
Date 74
– date format 79
– retrieval 74
– setting 79
Daytime running lamps 101
Defect
– door lock 30
– fuel filler flap 200
– glass sunroof 40
– luggage compartment lid 32
– panorama glass sunroof 41
– tailgate 33
Defrosting windows 106
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 106
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 106
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 106
Deleting a trip 141
Destination address
– entering 133, 139
Destination entry via BMW Assist 137
Destination for navigation
– entering via map 138
– entering via voice 139
– entry 133
Destination guidance 142
– bypassing route sections 143
– changing specified route 142
– continuing 142
– starting 142
– voice instructions 143
– volume of voice instructions 144
Digital clock 74
Digital radio, refer to HD Radio 156
Dimensions 239
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 63
Direction announcements, refer to Voice instructions 143
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 143
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 135
Displacement, refer to Engine data 238
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display elements, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 104
Displays
– on Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-up Display 95
Disposal
– battery of remote control with Comfort Access 38
– coolant 214
– vehicle battery 229
Distance, refer to Computer 76
Distance control, refer to Active cruise control 66
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 76
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 84
Divided rear backrest, refer to Through-loading system 116
Do 201
Door entry lighting 104
Door key, refer to Keys/remote control 26
Door lock 30
Door locking, confirmation signals 29
Doors
– manual operation 30
– remote control 28
DOT Quality Grades 207
Draft-free ventilation 108
Drinks holder, refer to Cupholders 114
Drive-off assistant 87
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 100
Driving stability control systems 85

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Driving through water 126
Driving tips, refer to General driving notes 124
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 107
Drying the air, refer to Cooling function 107
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 85
– indicator lamp 13, 86
– malfunction 87
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 86
– activating 86
– indicator lamp 13, 86
DVD
– country codes 162
– settings 163
– video playback 162
DVD menu 163
DVD player, refer to CD player 160
DVD video 162
Dynamic Brake Control DBC
– warning lamp 87
Dynamic destination guidance 143
Dynamic Drive 88
Dynamic Driving Control 62
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 85
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 86

E

Easy entry/exit 52
– backrest width 45
Eject button, refer to Buttons in area of CD/DVD player 152
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 30
– driver's door 30
– fuel filler flap 200
– glass sunroof, electric 40
– luggage compartment lid 32
– panorama glass sunroof 41
– tailgate 33
Electrical steering wheel adjustment 52
Electronic brake-force distribution 85
Electronic oil level check 212
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 30
– driver's door 30
– fuel filler flap 200
– luggage compartment lid 32
– tailgate 33
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 61
Emergency operation, refer to Moving manually
– glass sunroof 40
– panorama glass sunroof 41
Emergency release for luggage compartment lid in cargo bay 32
Emergency request 231
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 232
Energy-conscious driving, refer to Energy Control 75
Energy Control 75
Engine
– breaking-in 124
– data 238
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 74
– speed 238
– starting 58
– starting, with Comfort Access 36
– switching off 58
Engine compartment 212
Engine coolant 214
Engine oil
– adding 213
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 213
– approved engine oil 213
– checking oil level 212
– electronic oil level check 212
– interval between changes, refer to Service requirements 77
– oil change 213
– oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 213
Engine output, refer to Engine data 238
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 238
Engine starting, refer to Starting engine 58
Entering destination via town/city name 133
Entering intersection, navigation 134
Entering special destinations by name 137
Entering the address 133, 139
Entering zip code for navigation 134
Entertainment sound output on/off 152
Entry map for destination 138
Environmentally friendly driving
– refer to Energy control 75
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 153
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 85
Event Data Recorders 216
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 125

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Exterior mirrors 50
– adjusting 50
– automatic dimming feature 52
– automatic heating 51
– folding in and out 51
– tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 51
External audio device 113
External devices
– random sequence 174
Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting 233

F

Failure messages, refer to Check Control 79
False alarm
– refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 36
– refer to Switching off alarm 35
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 48
– warning lamp 48
Fastest route for navigation 142
Fast forward
– CD changer 162
– CD player 162
Filler neck for washer fluid 65
Filter, refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 108
First aid, refer to First aid kit 232
First-aid kit 232
Flashing
– during locking/unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals 29
– triple turn signal activation 63
Flat tire
– changing wheels 226
– compact wheel 228
– Flat Tire Monitor 88, 89
– refer to Tire condition 208
– run-flat tires 89, 91
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 90
– warning lamp 89, 91
Flat Tire Monitor 88
– false alarms 88
– initializing system 89
– snow chains 210
– system limits 88
– warning lamp 89
Fluid reservoir, refer to Filler neck for washer fluid 65
FM, waveband 155
Fog lamps 104
– indicator lamp 104
Folding rear backrest 116
– Sports Wagon 117
Folding rear backrest, Sports Wagon 117
Folding rear seat backrest 116
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 126
Footwell lamps, refer to Interior lamps 104
For your own safety 5
4-wheel drive system, refer to xDrive 86
Free memory capacity, music collection 170
Freeway, refer to Route criteria 142
Front airbags 93
Front armrest, refer to Center armrest, front 112
Front passenger airbags
– deactivating 94
Front seat adjustment 44
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 88
Fuel 201
– average consumption 75
– display 75
– high-quality brands 201
– quality 201
– refer to Average fuel consumption 75
– specifications 201
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 242
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 75
Fuel consumption display
– computer, average fuel consumption 75
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 75
Fuel-efficient driving
– refer to Energy control 75
– refer to Saving fuel 124
Fuel filler flap 200
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 200
Fuses 230

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 110
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 201
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 75
Gas station recommendations 143
Gearshift lever
– manual transmission 59
General driving notes 124, 125
Glass sunroof, electric 39
– Convenient opening and closing from outside 30
– Convenient opening and closing with Comfort Access 37
– moving manually 40
– remote control 28

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Glove compartment 112
– lighting 112
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 132
Grills, refer to Ventilation 108
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 241

H

Halogen lamps 222
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone 14
Hand washing 218
Hazard warning flashers 15
HDC Hill Descent Control 86
HD Radio 156
Head airbags 93
Headlamp
– cleaning tank, refer to Capacities 242
Headlamp control, automatic 100
Headlamp flasher 63
Headlamps 100
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 63
– filler neck for washer fluid 212
– replacing bulbs 222
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Light Control 101
Head restraints 46
– active front head restraints 47
– removing 47
– sitting safely 43
Head-up Display 95
Heated
– mirrors 51
– rear window 106
– seats 49
– steering wheel 52
Heating 105
– exterior mirrors 51
– interior 105
– rear window 106
– residual heat 107
– seats 49
– steering wheel 52
Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat 107
Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo 128
Height, refer to Dimensions 239
Height adjustment
– seats 44
– steering wheel 52
High-beam Assistant 102
High beams 102
– headlamp flasher 102
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 223
High-pressure cleaning jets 217, 218
High water, refer to Driving through water 126
Hill Descent Control HDC 86
Hills 126
Holder for cups 114
Homepage of BMW 4
Hood 211
Hooks for shopping bags, Sports Wagon 119
Horn 10
Hotel function, refer to Locking separately 31
Hot exhaust system 125
Hydraulic brake assistant, refer to Brake assistant 85
Hydroplaning 125

I

IBOC, refer to HD Radio 156
Ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 74
Identification mark
– recommended tire brands 209
– tire coding 206
iDrive 16
– automatic climate control 108
– automatic climate control with expanded scope 106
– changing language 82
– changing settings 82
– changing units of measure and display type 76
– controller 16
– controls 16
– menu guidance 17
– setting brightness 83
– setting the date and time 79
– start menu 17
– status information 19
Ignition 57
– switched off 58
– switched on 57
Ignition key, refer to Keys/remote control 26
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 57
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 57
Ignition lock 57
– starting engine with Comfort Access 37
Impressum 2
Imprint 2
Indicator/warning lamps
– ABS Antilock Brake System 87
– active steering 93
– airbags 95
– brake system 87
– DSC 13, 86
– DTC 13, 86
– Flat Tire Monitor 89
– safety belt warning 48
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 91
Indicator and warning lamps 13

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Indicator lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 104
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 202
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 88
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 90
Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor 89
– radio, refer to Storing stations 156
– refer to Power failure 229
– refer to Setting time and date 79
– seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Installation location
– mobile phone 112
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 143
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 104
Instrument panel, refer to Cockpit 10
Integrated key 26
Integrated universal remote control 110
Interactive map 138
Interior lamps 104
– switching on with remote control 28
Interior motion sensor 36
– switching off 36
Interior rearview mirror 51
– automatic dimming feature 52
Intermittent mode of the wipers 64
iPod, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 172
iPod, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 172

J

Jacking points 228
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 232
Jump starting 232

K

Keyless go, refer to Comfort Access 36
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort Access 36
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 26
Keys 26
– key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile 26
– spare key 26
Kick down, Automatic transmission with Steptronic 60
Knock control 201

L

Lamps
– refer to High-beam Assistant 102
Lamps and bulbs 221
Lane demarcation lines, refer to Lane Departure Warning 99
Lane Departure Warning 99
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 128
Last destinations 136
LATCH child restraint fixing system 54
Leather care 219
LEDs light-emitting diodes 222
Length, refer to Dimensions 239
License plate lamp, replacing bulbs 225
Light
– refer to Parking lamps/low beams 100
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 222
Lighter 114
Lighting
– instruments 104
– lamps and bulbs 221
– of the vehicle, refer to Lamps 100
Light switch 100
Loading
– securing cargo 128
– stowing cargo 127
– vehicle 126
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 128
Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Lokking 31
Locking 28
– confirmation signals 29
– from inside 31
– from outside 28
– without key, refer to Comfort Access 36
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 29
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
Low beams 100
– automatic 100
– replacing bulbs 222
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 45
Lug bolts 228
– tightening torque, refer to After mounting 228
– wrench 227
Luggage compartment, refer to Cargo bay
Luggage compartment lid 31
– emergency operation, refer to Manual operation 32
– emergency release 32
– locking separately 31
– opening from inside 31
– opening from outside 31
– unlocking and locking from inside 30
– unlocking manually 32
Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate
– Comfort Access 37

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Luggage compartment roller cover, Sports Wagon 117
Luggage net, refer to Partition net 118
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 128
Lumbar support 45

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 209
Maintenance 215
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 215
– refer to Service requirements 77
– refer to Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 215
Maintenance system 215
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 79
Managing music 170
Manual air distribution 107
Manual operation
– door lock 30
– driver's door 30
– fuel filler flap 200
– glass sunroof 40
– luggage compartment lid 32
– panorama glass sunroof 41
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 61
Manual transmission 59
Map for navigation
– changing scale 145
– destination entry 138
Map view 144
Map view facing north 144
Master key, refer to Keys/ remote control 26
Maximum cooling 107
Maximum speed
– with compact wheel 229
Maximum speed with winter tires 209
Measurements, refer to Dimensions 239
Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Messages 184
Messages from the Concierge service 185
Microfilter 108
Microphone
– for telephone 14
– for voice activation system 14
Mirror dimming feature 52
Mirrors 50
– automatic curb monitor 51
– folding in and out 51
– heating 51
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Mobile phone
– adjusting volume 181
– connecting, refer to Mobile phone, pairing 178
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 112
– operation via iDrive 181
– pairing 178
– refer to separate operating instructions
Mobile phone, refer to Telephone 178
Mobile phone battery 189
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 88
MP3 player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 172
MP3 player, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 172
Multi-channel playback 153
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 63
– refer to Wiper system 63
Music, playing 168
Music collection 167
– backup 171
– deleting 171
– random sequence 170
– restoring 171
Music player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 172
Music player, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 172
Music search 168
MW, waveband 155
My Info 185

N

Navigation
– starting destination guidance after entering a destination 135
– storing current position 135
– voice activation 139
Navigation data 132
Navigation destination
– entering manually 133
– home address 136
Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 143

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Navigation system 132
– address book 135
– bypassing route sections 143
– continuing destination guidance 142
– destination entry 133
– dynamic destination guidance 143
– entering a destination manually 133
– entering destination via voice 139
– frequently asked questions 148
– gas station recommendations 143
– planning a trip 140
– route list 143
– selecting destination via map 138
– selecting route criteria 142
– special destinations 136
– starting destination guidance 142
– terminating destination guidance 142
– traffic bulletins 145
– voice instructions 143
– volume adjustment 144
Neck support, refer to Head restraints 46
New remote control 26
New wheels and tires 208
Night Vision, refer to BMW Night Vision 96
Night vision device, refer to BMW Night Vision 96
Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 64
Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 233

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 216
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 201
Odometer 74
Oil, refer to Engine oil 212
Oil change intervals
– refer to Service requirements 77
Onboard computer, refer to iDrive 16
Onboard vehicle tool kit 221
Opening and closing
– Comfort Access 36
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
– panorama glass sunroof 41
– using remote control 28
– using the door lock 30
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Output, refer to Engine data 238
Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 107
Outside temperature display 74, 75
– changing units of measure 76
– in computer 76
Overheated engine, refer to Coolant temperature 74
Overview
– radio control 152

P

Panic mode 28
Panorama glass sunroof 40
– moving manually 41
Park Distance Control PDC 84
Parked car ventilation 109
– preselecting activation times 109
– switching on and off directly 109
Parked car ventilation system
– LED 105
Parking 13
– vehicle 58
Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 84
Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 84
Parking brake 59
– indicator lamp 13, 59
Parking brake, refer to Parking brake 59
Parking lamps 100
– replacing bulbs 223
Partition net, Sports Wagon 118
Parts and accessories 6
Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 51
Pathway lighting 101
PDC Park Distance Control 84
Personal Profile 26
Phone book 181
Phone numbers
– dialing 182
Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof, electric 39
– panorama glass sunroof 41
– power windows 38
Placing a call
– refer to telephone owner's manual
Plasters, refer to First aid kit 232
Plug-in unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 57
Polish 219
Pollen, refer to Microfilter/ activated charcoal filter 108
Power failure 229
Power windows, refer to Windows 38
Preselecting activation times of the parked car ventilation 109
Pressure, tires 202
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 90

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof, electric 39
– panorama glass sunroof 41
– windows 38

R

Radio
– controls 152
– HD Radio 156
– satellite radio 158
– selecting waveband 155
– storing stations 156
– switching on/off 152
– tone control 152
– volume 152
– Weather Band, refer to Weather news flashes 157
Radio key, refer to Keys/ remote control 26
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 57
Radio readiness 57
– switched off 58
– switched on 57
– with Comfort Access 37
Rain sensor 64
Random sequence
– external devices 174
– music collection 170
Reading lamps 104
Rear armrest, refer to Center armrest, rear 116
Rear fog lamps
– indicator lamp 13
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 224
– replacing bulbs 224
Rear seats
– adjusting head restraints 47
– folding over backrest 116
– heating 50
– removing head restraints 47
Rear socket 116
Rear ventilation 108
Rearview mirror 50
Rear window
– changing wiper blade 221
– heating 106
– opening and closing on Sports Wagon 32
– roller sun blinds, refer to Sun blinds 111
– wiper on Sports Wagon 64
Rear window safety switch 39
Reception
– quality 156
– radio stations 156
Recirculated-air mode 107
– air recirculation 107
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 107
Reclining seat, refer to Seats 44
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 224
Refueling 200
Releasing
– hood 211
Releasing the locks, refer to Unlocking 36
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 75
Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer 76
Remote control 26
– Comfort Access 36
– garage door opener 110
– luggage compartment lid 29
– malfunction 29, 37
– replacing battery 38
– tailgate 29
Removing condensation on the windows 106
Replacement fuses 230
Replacement of tires
– refer to Changing wheels 226
Replacement remote control, refer to New remote controls 26
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 221
Replacing tires 209
Replacing wheels/tires, refer to New wheels and tires 208
Reporting safety defects 7
Reserve
– warning, refer to Fuel gauge 75
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 154
Residual heat 107
Restraint systems
– for children 53
– refer to Safety belts 48
Retaining straps, refer to Storage area loading options, Sports Wagon 119
Retreaded tires 209
Reverse
– CD changer 162
– CD player 162
Reverse gear
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 60
– manual transmission 59
Road map 144
Roadside Assistance 193, 232
Roadside parking lamps 102
– replacing bulbs 223
Roller blind
– refer to Sun blinds 111
Roller cover
– refer to Luggage compartment roller cover, Sports Wagon 117
Roof load capacity 241
Roof-mounted luggage rack 128
Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 233
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 142, 143
– bypassing sections 143
– changing 142, 143
– changing criteria 142
– displaying map view 144
– displaying streets or towns/ cities 143
– selecting 142

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Route information, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 143
Route map, refer to Displaying map view 144
Route selection 142
Run-flat tires
– continuing driving with damaged tire 89, 91
– flat tire 89, 91
– Flat Tire Monitor 88
– inflation pressure 89
– tire inflation pressure 202
– Tire Pressure Monitor 90

S

Safety 5
Safety belts 48
– damage 48
– sitting safely 43
– warning lamp 48
Safety belt tensioners
– refer to Airbags 93
– refer to Safety belts 48
Safety systems
– ABS Antilock Brake System 85
– airbags 93
– driving stability control systems 85
– safety belts 48
Satellite radio 158
– enabling or disabling channel 158
– selecting channel 159
– storing channel 159
Screen, refer to iDrive 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 234
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 158
Seats 44
– active backrest width adjustment 45
– adjusting the seats 44
– comfort seat 44
– easy entry/exit 45
– heating 49
– lumbar support 45
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
– shoulder support 44
– sitting safely 43
– storing the setting 45
– thigh support 44
– ventilation, refer to Active seat ventilation 50
Securing load
– refer to Securing cargo 128
– with ski bag, refer to Securing cargo 120
Selecting a detour 147
Selecting distance with active cruise control 68
Selecting route 142
Selection options with navigation system 142
Selector lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59, 60
Selector lever lock, refer to Selecting transmission positions 60
Self-leveling suspension 88
Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic
– towing 234
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 232
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 215
Service Interval Display
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 215
– refer to Service requirements 77
Service Request 195
Service requirements 77
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 215
Services status 196
Setting button, refer to Controls, controller 16
Settings
– BMW Night Vision 98
– changing on Control Display 82
– clock, 12h/24h mode 79
– configuring, refer to Personal Profile 26
– DVD 163
– language 82
Settings for the map view 145
Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation times 109
Shifting gears, Automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
Shift paddles on steering wheel 62
Short commands for the voice activation system 243
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 142
Shoulder support 44
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 161
– CD player 161
Side airbags 93
Side marker lamps, replacing bulbs 224
Side-mounted turn signals, replacing bulbs 224
Side window blinds, refer to Sun blinds 111
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sitting safely 43
– with airbags 43
– with head restraint 43
– with safety belts 43
Ski bag 119

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sliding/tilt sunroof
– refer to Electric glass sunroof 39
– refer to Panorama glass sunroof 40
Slope assistant, refer to Drive-off assistant 87
Snap-in adapter
– mounting/removing 188
– using 178
Snow chains 210
Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 216
Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 57
Sockets, refer to Connecting electrical devices 115
Soft closure aid, refer to Automatic soft closing 31
SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency request 231
Spare
– adapter for spare key 26
– fuses 230
– key 26
– wheel, refer to Compact wheel 228
Spare wheel, refer to Changing wheels 226
Special destinations 136
Special destinations, displaying 138
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 213
Specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 213
Speed
– limit 81
– with compact wheel 229
Speed dial, refer to Speedometer 12
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 81
Speedometer 12
Speed Volume 153
Speed with winter tires 209
Split screen, refer to Control Display, switching on/off 19
Split screen content, refer to Display for split screen content, selecting 20
Sport automatic transmission 62
– Dynamic Driving Control 62
– kick down 60
– towing 234
– with Comfort Access 37
Sport program, Automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
Sports Wagon
– automatic luggage compartment roller cover 117
– automatic tailgate operation 34
– compartments in cargo bay 118
– expanding cargo bay 117
– luggage compartment roller cover 117
– luggage compartment roller cover for cargo bay 117
– opening rear window 32
– opening tailgate 33
– panorama glass sunroof 40
– partition net 118
– rear window wiper 64
– rear window wiper, changing wiper blade 221
– releasing fuel filler flap in event of electrical malfunction 200
– self-leveling suspension 88
– socket in cargo bay 115
– storage area loading options 119
– tail lamps, replacing bulbs 225
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 85
Start/Stop button 57
– starting the engine 58
– switching off the engine 58
Starting, refer to Starting engine 58
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 232
Starting difficulties, refer to Jump starting 232
Starting off on slopes, refer to Drive-off assistant 87
Start menu 17
Station, refer to Radio 155
Station, selecting
– radio 155
Stationary ventilation
– preselecting activation times 109
Status information on Control Display 19
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steam cleaners 217, 218
Steering wheel
– adjustment 52
– automatic adjustment, refer to Steering wheel memory 45
– easy entry/exit 52
– heating 52
– lock, refer to Ignition lock 57
– memory 45
– shift paddles 62
Steering with variable ratio, refer to Active steering 92
Steptronic
– refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– refer to Sport automatic transmission 62
– refer to Sport program and manual mode 61
Storage area loading options, Sports Wagon 119
Storage compartments 113
Stored trip, calling up 141
Storing 220
Storing a destination in the address book 135
Storing a trip 140
Storing music 167

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Storing tires 209
Storing your vehicle 220
Street, entering, navigation 134
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 202
Sun blinds 111
Surround 153
SVCD 162
SW, waveband 155
Swinging up floor panel, Sports Wagon 118
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching automatically between high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant 102
Switching off
– engine 58
Switching on
– audio 152
– CD changer 152
– CD player 152
– radio 152
Swiveling
– headlamps, refer to Adaptive Light Control 101
Symbols 4
– indicator/warning lamps 13

T

Tachometer 74
Tailgate 31
– automatic operation 34
– emergency operation, refer to Opening manually 33
– locking and unlocking from inside 30
– opening from inside 33
Tail lamps 224
– replacing bulbs 224
Tank contents, refer to Capacities 242
Target cursor for navigation 138
Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety 5
Technical data 238
– capacities 242
– dimensions 239
Telephone 178
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 112
– voice commands 185
TeleService 192
TeleService Diagnosis 194
TeleService Help 194
Temperature
– adjusting in upper body region 108
– adjusting with automatic climate control 106
– changing unit of measure 76
– refer to Coolant temperature 74
Temperature display
– outside temperature 74
– outside temperature warning 74
– setting the units 76
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 65
The individual vehicle 5
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 225
Through-loading system 116
Tightening torque of the lug bolts, refer to After mounting 228
Tilt alarm sensor 36
– switching off 36
Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 51
Timer, refer to Preselecting activation times 109
Tire inflation pressures 202
Tire pressure
– loss 89, 90
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 90
Tire Quality Grading 207
Tire replacement
– new wheels and tires 208
Tires
– age 207
– air loss 89, 91
– breaking-in 124
– changing 208
– condition 208
– damage 208
– flat tire, refer to Changing wheels 226
– inflation pressure 202
– new wheels and tires 208
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 88
– pressure monitoring, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 90
– replacing 226
– retreaded tires 209
– size 206
– tread 208
– wear indicators 208
– wheel/tire combination 208
– winter tires 209
Tires, run-flat
– continuing driving with damaged tire 89, 91
– flat tire 91
– inflation pressure 91
– new tires 208
– new wheels and tires 208
Tire trouble
– changing wheels 226
– compact wheel 228
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 145
Tone
– control 152
– middle setting 154
Tools, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 221
Top 50 of music collection 169
Torque
– refer to Engine data 238
Torque, lug bolts, refer to After mounting 228
Tow bar 234
Tow fitting 233

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Towing 233
– methods 234
– tow fittings 233
– with automatic and sport automatic transmission 234
– with manual transmission 234
– with Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 234
Town/city, for navigation 133
Tow rope 235
Tow-starting 233
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 90
– resetting system 90
– system limits 90
– warning lamp 91
Tracks
– selecting with CD 160
Traction-assist feature, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 85
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 85
Traffic bulletins
– categories 147
Traffic bulletins, filtering 147
Traffic information for navigation
– depiction in route map 147
– during destination guidance 147
Traffic information with navigation 145
Traffic jam
– displaying traffic information 145
– refer to Bypassing route sections 143
Transmission
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– drive-off assistant 87
– manually unlocking and locking transmission lock 61
– manual transmission 59
– sport automatic transmission 62
– towing 234
Transporting children safely 53
Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo 128
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 208
Trip-distance counter
– refer to Trip meter 74
Trip meter 74
Trip odometer, refer to Trip meter 74
Trunk, refer to Cargo bay
Trunk lid, refer to Tailgate 33
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 239
Turning lamps 101
– replacing bulbs 223
Turn signals 63
– indicator lamp 12
– replacing bulbs 224

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 207
Units
– average consumption 76
– temperature 76
Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 110
Universal remote control 110
Unlocking
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
– setting unlocking behavior 28
– without key, refer to Comfort Access 36
Unlocking without key, refer to Comfort Access 36
Updating the navigation data 132
USB audio interface 172
Used batteries
– refer to Disposal 229
– refer to Replacing battery 38
Using turn signals 63

V

Valve screw caps, refer to After mounting 228
VCD 162
Vehicle
– battery 229
– breaking-in 124
– loading 126
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 239
– parking 58
– weights 241
Vehicle care, refer to Care 217
Vehicle jack 227
– jacking points 228
Ventilation 108
– draft-free 108
– in rear 108
– while stationary 109
Venting
– refer to Ventilation 108
Vent outlets 105
– refer to Ventilation 108
Vent outlets, automatic climate control 105
Vents, automatic climate control 105
Vents, refer to Ventilation 108
Video menu 163
Video playback 162
Viscosity 213

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Voice, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 143
Voice activation system
– overview 22
– short commands 243
Voice commands
– telephone 185
Voice instructions for navigation system 143
– repeating 144
– switching on/off 143
– volume 144
Voice phone book 187
Volume 152
– audio sources 152
– cargo bay 241
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 242
– mobile phone 181
– voice instructions 144
– windshield cleaning system, refer to Capacities 242
Volume balance, tone setting 153

W

Warning lamps, refer to Indicator and warning lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 79
Warning on leaving lane, refer to Lane Departure Warning 99
Warning triangle 231
Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 215
Washer fluid 65
– capacity of the reservoir 65
Waste container, refer to Ashtray 114
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 126
Water penetration 217, 218
Waveband for radio 155
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 208
Weather news flashes 157
Website BMW 4
Weights 241
Welcome lamps 100
Wheel/tire combination, refer to New wheels and tires 208
Wheel/tire damage 208
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 239
Wheels and tires 202
Width, refer to Dimensions 239
Windows 38
– Convenient opening and closing 28
– Convenient opening and closing from outside 30
– Convenient opening and closingwith Comfort Access 37
– rear window, Sports Wagon 32
– safety switch 39
Windshield
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 63
– defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 106
– displays, refer to Head-up Display 95
Windshield wash
– automatic, refer to Rain sensor 64
– capacities, reservoir 242
– filler neck for washer fluid 212
– rear window 64
– washer fluid 65
– windshield washer nozzles 64
– wiper system 63
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 63
– wiper blade replacement 221
Winter tires 209
– setting speed limit 81
– storage 209
Wiper blades
– replacement 221
Wiper system 63
– rain sensor 64
– washer fluid 65
– windshield washer nozzles 64
Word matching principle for navigation 141
Working in the engine compartment 211
Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 221

X

xDrive 86
Xenon lamps 223
– replacing bulbs 223

Y

Your individual vehicle
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 26

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

01 41 2 602 678 Ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 678 - © 08/09 BMW AG